Perfect Writer
Perfect Speller
PERFECT WRITER/SPeller USER'S GUIDE

Perfect Writer

I. Introduction ................................................. 1

PART I  WORD PROCESSING FUNDAMENTALS

II. Getting Acquainted .......................................... 11
III. Beginning and Quitting ...................................... 21
IV. Moving the Cursor .......................................... 27
V. Deleting and Inserting ...................................... 43
VI. Storing Your Text ........................................... 59
VII. Printing a Document ....................................... 67
VIII. Modes and Additional Commands ......................... 83

PART II  ADVANCED EDITING PROCEDURES

IX. Editing Multiple Files ...................................... 95
X. Split-Screen Editing ......................................... 107
XI. Copying and Moving Text .................................. 119
XII. Searching .................................................. 129

PART III  DOCUMENT DESIGN

XIII. Overview .................................................. 143
XIV. Environment Format Commands ............................. 153
XV. Typeface Format Commands ................................ 179
XVI. Document Sectioning and Organization .................. 185
XVII. Tools for Form Letter Design ............................. 201
XVIII. Document Style Commands ............................... 219
XIX. Document Design Lessons ................................ 225

Perfect Speller

I. Introduction .................................................. 255
II. Using Perfect Speller ........................................ 257
III. About the Dictionary ....................................... 267
IV. Optional Parameters ........................................ 269
V. Customizing Perfect Speller ................................ 279
APPENDICES

A. Installation
B. Learning to Use Perfect Writer
C. Changing the Command Keys
D. Format Error Messages
E. "Swapping..."
F. Configuring Perfect Speller
G. Limitations of Perfect Speller
H. Glossary
I. Index
Chapter I
INTRODUCTION

Welcome to the world of Perfect Writer, where computers are 'friendly' and where the writing, editing, formatting, and printing of written documents is quick and easy.

Perfect Writer is an advanced design software system that represents the latest available technology in word processing. Once installed in your computer it will allow you to perform a wide variety of text editing and printing tasks with an ease you never dreamed possible.

This User's Guide will introduce you to Perfect Writer. No doubt you view the reading of a large computer user's guide as a demanding requirement. However, have no fear, because the Perfect Writer User's Guide represents a radical departure from the computer manuals you may be accustomed to. Its style and organization permit quick and easy understanding of every feature of the Perfect Writer system. Though it is comprehensive and complete, the User's Guide is nevertheless free of technical jargon and arcane 'computerese.' Numerous illustrations and diagrams accompany the structured, step-by-step explanations. In many instances, you will only have to glance at the illustration or example to grasp the principle involved. We are not exaggerating when we say that you will probably begin using most of the basic features of Perfect Writer within 25 to 30 minutes after putting it on your computer.

Organization of the User's Guide

For your easy understanding and reference, the User's Guide is presented in three parts:

Part One: This section contains all the basic commands and instructions necessary to begin using Perfect Writer, including: moving the cursor, deleting and inserting text, storing, and printing documents. Where appropriate, illustrations and examples have been provided to help explain the material. Also, a number of exercises allow you to begin practicing what you learn.
Part Two: Here are presented those commands and procedures that involve details not briefly explained. These procedures include: multiple document handling, split-screen editing, searching, searching and replacing, and moving and copying text. Presented in the same straightforward manner, with many helpful examples, these procedures are quick and easy to learn.

Part Three: This part introduces you to Perfect Writer’s document design and printing capabilities. Though by this time you will be thoroughly accustomed to the ‘basic’ printing options presented in the first section, the formatting options contained in this section are so simple and easy to learn, we think you will soon begin using them in almost every document you prepare.

Next, an Appendix contains Perfect Writer’s installation instructions, a comprehensive glossary of terms, and a list of possible error messages that can occur.

Finally, a comprehensive index will help you quickly find whatever you want to know about Perfect Writer.

WHAT YOU GET WITH PERFECT WRITER

STANDARD FEATURES

• Straightforward steps for creating letters and documents.

• Control commands that move you quickly and easily throughout the document displayed on your screen.

• Simple, yet comprehensive, procedures for changing and editing a document.

• Safe and convenient routines for storing the material you create.

• A basic printing option that satisfies a wide variety of printing needs.

• Numerous internal safeguards that protect against irretrievable mistakes and accidental loss of your material.

• A large, flexible, and easily understood command language that is quick and easy to learn and that uses the standard keys of any computer console.
ADVANCED FEATURES

Virtual Memory Architecture

Virtual memory enables your computer to run programs which are larger than its internal memory. This is accomplished by an advanced software engineering design feature that swiftly and automatically transfers portions of core memory to and from disk storage. This exchange or 'swapping' allows text files to be processed that are larger than your computer's internal memory, thus permitting convenient editing of very large documents. Most amazing of all, the operation is so efficiently and automatically performed by Perfect Writer that one has almost no awareness of it occurring, except that working memory seems almost infinite!

Multiple File Buffers

Perfect Writer is a 'multi-buffer in-memory word processor,' which simply means you can access several document files at one time, a feature that is virtually unknown to other word processors. By copying documents into separate 'memory buffers,' it is possible to switch back and forth between documents with ease. In fact, Perfect Writer allows simultaneous access and editing of up to seven documents at one time.

Multiple File Display

In order to take full advantage of the multiple file buffers and virtual memory architecture, Perfect Writer provides a multiple file display that allows you to view, compare, and edit two documents simultaneously. Using a split screen, it is possible to gather parts of text from one file and insert them into another file while viewing the process on the screen. This flexibility is unmatched by any other available word processor.
SOPHISTICATED DOCUMENT DESIGN CAPABILITIES

Perfect Writer includes a document design program which allows you to create a 'perfect' layout for your document. When preparing a document on a conventional typewriter it is necessary to format the text by continually aligning and realigning margins, tab spacings, line spacing, etc. Most word processors today require that you follow these same old fashioned procedures, except that now you are setting and resetting the margins on your computer instead of the typewriter.

Perfect Writer does away with all this. With Perfect Writer you simply indicate, using a single word or symbol, how the text is to be formatted. Will it be a quotation? A verse? A numbered list? A footnote? Will the heading be a chapter heading, a subheading, a section, an appendix? Knowing what kind of format you want for a particular portion of text, Perfect Writer automatically invokes a predefined format option (there are more than 30). Automatically, Perfect Writer centers the text, justifies it, underlines it, boldfaces it, italicizes it, indents it, numbers it, surrounds it with white space (in pleasing proportion), makes an entry for it in the table of contents—whatever! You don’t have to concern yourself. Of course, you could do it all in the old fashioned way, if you want to... but why bother? For each of its standard formats Perfect Writer provides 'style' options that allow you to adjust the formats to your personal preferences if the default settings do not suit you.

Advanced Document Design Features

Table of Contents

Perfect Writer automatically creates a table of contents, listing and numbering the chapters, sections, subsections, headings, paragraphs, and appendices included in your document. In addition, the table of contents produced includes the page numbers where the listed text begins.

Index

Perfect Writer automatically creates an alphabetized index of all words and topics tagged in a text, indicating the page where the words or topics appear.
Footnotes

Depending upon your preference, Perfect Writer will automatically place your footnotes at the bottom of the page, the end of the document, or within the body of the text itself. The footnotes are sequentially numbered, and if you add new footnotes, Perfect Writer automatically renumbers from the beginning.

In-Text Referencing

Perfect Writer allows you to tag topics or items for later reference. For example, if you discuss 'Theory X' on pages 5 and 6, then wish to reference it 10 pages later, Perfect Writer will automatically determine on which page in the printed version the reference will occur, and it will insert this page number in your in-text reference. If you later revise the document, inserting or deleting pages and sections, Perfect Writer automatically adjusts the page numbering to keep your in-text references correct.

Form Letter Design

Perfect Writer offers powerful and flexible options for creating and manipulating form letters.

- Console Input: Perfect Writer allows you to insert portions of text from the console while a document is being printed. This is especially useful for 'individualizing' form letters.

- Targeted Form Letters: Perfect Writer allows you to print selected parts of a document. For instance, you can prepare a letter with a number of different closing paragraphs targeted to different groups. When the letter is printed you select the particular closing paragraph you want for each group.
COMPLETE ADAPTABILITY

Most word processing programs are written in 'assembler language,' a low level, machine-oriented programming language. Programs written at this level do not make full use of the capabilities available in the microcomputers being built today. In contrast, Perfect Writer is written in 'C,' a high level streamlined language which allows much greater flexibility and creativity in software design. More importantly, 'C' programs are highly 'transportable,' which means that although Perfect Writer was originally intended for the 8-bit Z-80 machines, the program will also operate perfectly well on the new 16-bit machines (such as IBM's Personal Computer), and even 32-bit machines. The next several years will see more and more personal computers appearing based on the 16- and 32 bit processors, because of the combined speed, accuracy, and memory size they offer. Compared to the current generation of 8-bit personal computers, these new machines represent a quantum leap in power and capability.

Constructed as they are, with outdated software technology and the primitive assembler language, current word processors will not be able to keep up with these major advances in computer hardware. Instead they will literally 'tie your computer in knots.' Perfect Writer on the other hand, because it is written in 'C,' will not become obsolete, but will easily accompany advances in computer hardware through the year 2000, at least. This means that if you upgrade your computer hardware in the coming years, you can be safely assured that:

- Your text files will still be usable.
- You will not need to purchase a new word processor.
- You will not have to learn a new word processor.

True ASCII Text Files

In contrast to most other word processors, Perfect Writer does not use specialized 'high order bits' [this is obsolete technology] to store text files; rather, it uses the 'American Standard Code for Information Interchange' (ASCII), meaning that you can transfer Perfect Writer text files between computer systems [for example, text files edited on an IBM personal computer can be edited on a KayPro computer and vice versa] and between programs in the Perfect Software family [Perfect Speller, Perfect Filer, Perfect Calc and Perfect Link].

†Note: For CP/M systems, it is possible to use the [Z] option in most versions of PIP to strip off these 'high order bits' used by WordStar and other first generation word processors. In this way, it is possible to use Perfect Writer to edit text files from other word processors.
Self Teaching Software

Perfect Writer includes a 'Lessons' diskette that teaches you word processing while you sit in front of your computer. You simply load the 'Lessons' diskette and follow the step-by-step instructions at your own pace and convenience. The self teaching software allows you to split the display screen and create a scratch pad in the top window to practice writing and editing documents, while reading the instructions displayed in the bottom window.

FINAL WORD

We are at the dawn of an historic revolution, equivalent in scope to the Industrial Revolution of the 19th century. In the Industrial Revolution, human beings were able to harness, through the application of scientific laws, vast new resources of power for industrial applications. In the personal computer revolution, human beings are again harnessing power, but of a different kind. It is the power of artificial memory and intelligence. As noted computer scientist Joseph DeKen writes: "[Human beings] would find it useless to compete in raw muscle power with tractors and combines; it is equally futile to compete in raw memory power with a bank of video disks."

Through the decade of the 80's and beyond, personal computers will become increasingly important to us, not only in our businesses and professions, but in our personal lives. Their function will be one of freeing us from much of the numbing drudgery that has for so long hampered and stunted our intelligence and creativity. We sincerely hope that as you learn to use Perfect Writer, you will find this to be the promise of the new age: that your skills and abilities are increased and enlarged, and that Perfect Writer frees you to do more creative and productive work.
8 Introduction
Part I

WORD PROCESSING FUNDAMENTALS

In This Section

• GETTING ACQUAINTED

• How to type COMMAND keys

• How to BEGIN and QUIT Perfect Writer

• How to ENTER your text

• How to EDIT your text, including:
  * Deleting
  * Inserting

• How to STORE your text

• How to PRINT your text

This section of the User’s Guide contains all of the basic commands necessary to begin using the Perfect Writer word processing system. As you will see, the material has been outlined and structured for quick and easy learning. Although items can be individually referenced, we recommend that you read the sections sequentially, stopping to practice the exercises provided.
"AND THIS IS MY WIFE, EDNA."

Getting Acquainted
Chapter II
GETTING ACQUAINTED

This is where you should begin to learn about Perfect Writer. This chapter presents the major conceptual elements of a screen oriented editor like Perfect Writer, and introduces a number of terms and ideas that will be used later to explain how Perfect Writer works.

Because Perfect Writer shows you the text you are editing on the screen of your terminal, it is called a 'Screen Oriented Editor.' The Perfect Writer screen display is divided into three areas. The major portion is the 'window,' where the text of a document being edited is displayed. Two smaller portions, the 'Mode Line' and the 'Echo Line,' appear at the bottom of the screen, beneath the window.
The Window

The window can hold 20 or so consecutive lines of a document at one time. The window always shows the current status of the text it contains. That is, as text is inserted or deleted, the screen reflects the change immediately. A fundamental principle of Perfect Writer is that what you see on the screen is what you actually have in your document.

Figure 1: Screen Display

The Cursor

The screen display always contains within it the terminal's 'cursor,' a solid, sometimes blinking box or underline. The cursor is simply an indicator of the point where you are in your text.
The Mode Line

The Mode Line is of special importance in the Perfect Writer screen display. It appears beneath the window and contains information relevant to the editing you are currently doing. A typical Mode Line might look like this:

![Figure 2: Mode Line](image)

The elements of the Mode Line (here numbered) mean the following:
1. You are typing in the "fill" mode. In this mode, all words are wrapped to provide a constant right margin.
2. You are working in an editing buffer here called "Newfile," a name you would use when switching from buffer to buffer (see Chapter IX).
3. You are editing a file called "b:NEWFILE.MSS." The "b" indicates the disk drive where the file is located, in this case, the diskette on drive "b."
4. The cursor is approximately 23% of the way through the file.

The Echo Line

The third important area of the display screen is the line below the Mode Line, called the 'Echo Line.' The Echo Line is so-called because it "echoes" command prefix characters. For example, when the command key 'Escape' is typed, the message 'Meta:' will appear at the left of the Echo Line. The Echo Line is also used for displaying and accepting questions and additional information that Perfect Writer needs to complete certain commands. Finally, various system messages are displayed in the Echo Line.
**COMMAND KEYS**

Perfect Writer uses two keys in combination with other characters to produce commands that will search, delete, store, and otherwise edit text material. These are:

- The **Escape** key

- The **Control** key

In this section we will briefly discuss the operation of these two command keys in order to help you understand the material that follows. The emphasis will be upon the **mechanics** of typing commands, and therefore it will not be necessary to remember the specific commands given as examples. All commands will be discussed individually and in detail in the subsequent sections of this manual. As you will learn, these two keys, in conjunction with the regular keys on your keyboard, provide you with a powerful command set for Perfect Writer.
The Control Key

The Control key functions somewhat like a 'shift key' on an ordinary typewriter. Depressing and releasing it by itself produces no effect. However, depressing and holding it, while typing another character results in a command recognized by Perfect Writer.

For example, depressing and holding the Control key while typing the letter 'D' tells Perfect Writer to delete a character.

(While holding the Control key, depress 'D')

Note: The solid line indicates that both keys are depressed at the same time.

Sometimes the Control key is accompanied by two characters, as in the following CREATE TWO WINDOWS command. Here, the first character, 'X,' is depressed in conjunction with the Control key, while the second character, '2,' is not.

(While holding the Control key, depress 'X'; after releasing these, depress '2.')
For some commands the Control key is used twice in succession, as in the following QUIT command, which tells Perfect Writer that you want to stop using the system:

![CTRL X CTRL C](image)

(That is, while holding the Control key, depress 'X'; then, while holding the Control key again, depress 'C'.)

**The Escape Key**

Like the Control key, the Escape key is also followed by a character in producing commands. The Escape key is used for an imaginary shift key like the Control key that we call Meta. The commands produced by the combination of the Control key and a character are referred to as (obviously enough) Control commands. The commands produced by the combination of the Escape key and a character are called Meta commands, as if they were produced by this imaginary shift key, the Meta key. However, unlike the Control key, the Escape key must not be held. It has only to be depressed and then released. Because of this it produces an effect that is lasting and cannot be ignored. To alert you that the Escape key has been depressed and that the character following it will result in a command, the following message is displayed in the Echo Line at the bottom of the screen:

![Meta:](image)

This alerts you that the next character that you type will be interpreted as a Meta command. If you type the character that follows the Escape quickly enough, then this message will not appear.
Example: One Escape command is the DELETE SENTENCE command, which tells Perfect Writer to delete an entire sentence regardless of the number of lines it occupies. As with the Control key, no character 'K' will be printed on the screen:

\[
\text{ESC} \quad \ldots \ldots \quad \text{K}
\]

(simply type the Escape key, followed by 'K')

Note: The dotted line indicates that the two keys need not be depressed at the same time.

Escape-Control Commands

In a few cases the Escape key is used in combination with the Control key, as in the DELETE ENTIRE LINE command:

\[
\text{ESC} \quad \ldots \ldots \quad \text{CTRL} \quad \text{K}
\]

(Which means: first depress and release the Escape key; then, while holding the Control key, type 'K')

Here the Escape-Control command is simply an enhancement of an original Control command. That is, Control-----K (DELETE LINE command) will delete all characters from the position of the cursor to the end of a line, whereas Escape . . . Control-----K (DELETE ENTIRE LINE) will delete characters on both sides of the cursor.

In just this fashion Escape commands are often related to Control commands, performing a similar function but on a larger scale. This relationship makes the commands easy to learn and remember, and we will be pointing it out to you frequently in the rest of the manual.
No CARRIAGE RETURN

There is no need to type a RETURN ('ENTER' or 'SEND') to begin execution of a command. The display screen automatically and immediately reflects your command after the Escape or Control command characters have been typed.

COMMAND MESSAGES

Sometimes Perfect Writer requires additional information regarding a command. In such cases, it will pause and ask for this information in the Echo Line at the bottom of the screen.

For example, at the command to WRITE FILE, Perfect Writer will ask in the Echo Line:

```
File to Write [CR]:
```

In this case, you must name the new file you have been editing, before Perfect Writer will write it on your disk for permanent storage.

**Note:** Every command that asks for further information will also indicate the appropriate system response to follow. In this example, it is a '[CR].', or 'carriage return.' After entering the file name type a 'carriage return' to tell Perfect Writer that execution of the command is now ready to continue.

The Escape key is sometimes used in this way. When it is, '[ESC]' appears after Perfect Writer's question to you.
YES/NO Responses

Sometimes in response to a command Perfect Writer will ask for a yes/no decision from you. Typing either 'Y' or 'N' is sufficient answer for Perfect Writer to complete the command.

The GO BACK Command

Any command which Perfect Writer has not yet begun executing can be canceled by typing the GO BACK command. If you ever change your mind and want to stop or simply get stuck, just enter the GO BACK command:
Beginning

When you have writing, editing, and printing work to do, you will wish to begin the "Editing" Mode of Perfect Writer. To do this:

1. You will have to turn on your computer system and terminal, and call up DOS†, the operating system. Usually this only involves turning the power on, inserting a diskette into the first drive, and depressing and releasing the 'Reset' button.

2. After you have entered CP/M there will be a prompt that indicates that CP/M is ready for you to give it a command.

Type 'menu' and hit the carriage return. Enter:

A>menu [CR]*

*Note: [CR] means hit return key.

†DOS stands for Disk Operating System (i.e., CP/M, MSDOS, CP/M 86, etc.).
This will call up Perfect Writer’s Main Selection menu:

3. To begin an editing session, type the letter ‘E’ which will cause Perfect Writer to ask for the name of the file you wish to edit.

4. You may give a filename now, by typing the name followed by a carriage return or you may elect to assign a name later by typing only a carriage return.

After some disk activity you will be in Perfect Writer’s editor.

If you would prefer not to use the menu system, you may merely type ‘pw’ followed by the filename of the file you wish to edit (e.g., ‘pw filename’). PW is the name of the Perfect Writer editor (see Chapter VII, page 72).
Quitting

When you wish to stop working in the Perfect Writer editor, do this:

1. Type the QUIT command:

   ![CTRL X CTRL C]

   If you have edited or changed the document you have been working with, or if it is a new document, Perfect Writer will ask in the Echo Line:

   ![Abandon Modified Buffer(s)?]

2. Answer yes or no, by typing either "Y" or "N."

Note: The procedures for saving a new or edited document will be discussed later. Perfect Writer will always try to return you to the main menu level, if possible. If you entered from the menu then you will always be returned to the menu. If you have elected to avoid the use of the menu system as described in Chapter VII, page 72 then you may be left at the CP/M command level.
ENTERING YOUR TEXT

This section explains how you can enter your text—a letter, an essay, a memorandum—into Perfect Writer.

Steps:
1. Begin Perfect Writer as instructed earlier.
2. To enter text, begin typing as you would on a standard typewriter. As you type, your words are displayed in the window at the position of the cursor.
3. There is no need to use the 'carriage return' (or 'enter' key) to start new lines. Perfect Writer automatically begins a new line when necessary.
4. Use the 'Delete' key ('DEL' or 'RUBOUT') to correct typing errors. The Delete key erases the previous character and moves the cursor back one space.
5. Separate your paragraphs with blank lines, using the enter or return keys to create these. Paragraphs must be separated by at least one blank line.
6. Use the tab key to indent the first line of each paragraph, if you want.
7. As you near the bottom of the screen, your text will move up and redisplay, so that your cursor always stays visible.

Note: It is important to understand the action of the 'carriage return,' the 'tab' key, and the 'space bar,' all of which actually insert characters into the text. The characters are invisible but nevertheless quite real. They can be moved and deleted. They are quite different from the other 'blankspaces' on your screen.

The space bar, for example, inserts a character representing a single blank space. The tab key inserts a character representing eight character spaces.

The return or enter key inserts what is called a 'newline' character. Like the characters inserted by the tab and the space bar, it is invisible. Its sole function is to tell Perfect Writer to begin a new line at that point. Newline characters can be deleted just like any other character.

To see how the newline character functions, type several carriage returns in a row. Notice how the cursor is moved to a new line each time. Now type the Delete key several times. The cursor will be moved back to its previous line as each successive 'newline' character is deleted.
Exercise: Type the following document onto Perfect Writer, correcting typing errors as you go. Observe all indentions, separating paragraphs with single blank lines.

MEMORANDUM

To: All staff

From: The boss

Re: New staff member

Perfect Writer has at last arrived, and you are all invited at your convenience to become familiar with it. I am speaking of our new word processor.

Though it arrived in a simple, brown paper mailer, Perfect Writer is really a beaut! And what a worker! Two weeks worth of paper piles disposed of in three days!

I know everyone will be crowding around Perfect Writer before long, so I have made arrangements that everyone gets a turn at the keyboard!

Of course, anyone who wants to be trained, will be. (Training doesn't take very long because Perfect Writer is probably the easiest word processor to learn.)
Chapter IV
MOVING THE CURSOR

You wish to begin changing and correcting a document that you have entered onto Perfect Writer. The first step is to position the cursor at the end of the word or line in the text to be changed.

The following commands move the cursor across lines and words of the text without deleting or changing any character. Note that most of the following cursor commands are mnemonically assigned; that is, 'F' for 'forward,' 'B' for 'backward,' etc.

The FORWARD CHARACTER Command

Moves the cursor one character forward along the line it occupies.

The BACKWARD CHARACTER Command

Moves the cursor backward one character along the line it occupies.
The FORWARD WORD Command

Moves the cursor forward to the end of the word it currently occupies. If the cursor is not in a word, this command will move the cursor to the end of the next word.

The BACKWARD WORD Command

Moves the cursor backward to the beginning of the word it is currently in. If the cursor is not in a word, this command will move it to the beginning of the previous word.

Note how Control ----- F and Control ----- B are related to the Meta commands Escape ... F and Escape ... B. The Control commands work on small units while the Meta commands perform similar editing functions only on larger units. This is part of the 'orthogonal command' feature used to make Perfect Writer easier to learn.
The BEGINNING OF LINE Command

Moves the cursor to the beginning of the line it occupies. Remember this command by thinking of 'A' as being at the 'beginning' of the alphabet. Successive commands will move the cursor to the beginning of subsequent lines.

CTRL A

The END OF LINE Command

Moves the cursor to the end of the line it occupies. Successive commands will move to the end of subsequent lines.

CTRL E
The BEGINNING OF SENTENCE Command

Moves the cursor to the beginning of the sentence it occupies. If not in a sentence, the cursor moves to the beginning of the previous sentence.

The END OF SENTENCE Command

Moves the cursor to the end of the sentence it occupies, i.e. until it encounters a period, '.', a question mark, '?', or an exclamation mark, '!'. If the cursor is not in a sentence, it will move to the end of the following sentence.

Note how Control—A and Control—E are related to the Meta commands Escape··A and Escape··E as mentioned earlier.
The PREVIOUS LINE Command

Moves the cursor up to the previous line, keeping the cursor in roughly the same column as it moves.

The NEXT LINE Command

Moves the cursor down to the next line, keeping the cursor in roughly the same column as it moves.
The BEGINNING OF PARAGRAPH Command

Moves the cursor from anywhere inside the paragraph it occupies to the beginning of the paragraph.

The END OF PARAGRAPH Command

Moves the cursor from anywhere inside the paragraph it occupies to the end of the paragraph.

Again, note how Control — P and Control — N are related to the Meta commands Escape · · P and Escape · · N.
Moving Screens

If your document occupies more than one screen, it is often not convenient to move through it using only the above cursor commands. You will want to move through the text screen-full by screen-full, even jumping to the beginning or end of the document.

To fully understand the commands that will do this, it is helpful to think of the document you are editing as being a continuous roll of film which rises onto the screen at the bottom and leaves the screen at the top, as in the following illustration.

In this illustration, your screen is like a 'window' through which you are able to view portions of the text as it passes before you. The beginning of your document is somewhere 'above' the screen, and the end is somewhere 'below.'

The screen commands which follow allow you to scroll the text in either direction, in order to examine 'previous' or upcoming ('next') pages.
The VIEW NEXT SCREEN Command

Brings unseen text from the next screen display into view.

To provide continuity when going from screen to screen, Perfect Writer will keep the last two lines of the old screen and shift the document up to the next screen.

Before

After

Notice how the lines have scrolled down.
The VIEW PREVIOUS SCREEN Command

Brings unseen text from the previous screen into view.
The BEGINNING OF DOCUMENT Command

Advances the cursor to the beginning of the document, regardless of the number of lines or length of text.
The END OF DOCUMENT Command

Advances the cursor to the end of the document, regardless of the number of screens or length of text.
The EXCHANGE CURSOR & MARK Command

Exchanges the point of the cursor with an invisible mark. Useful for returning to one's original position in a document after executing, for example, a BEGINNING (or END) OF DOCUMENT COMMAND.

This is an example, nothing more. This is an example, nothing more. This is an example, nothing more. This is an example, nothing more. This is an example, nothing more.
The CENTER WINDOW Command

Causes text surrounding the cursor to be redisplayed in the center of the screen. This command is extremely useful with cursor commands. For example, the cursor having been positioned on a line at the bottom of the screen, this command will cause text to be redisplayed so that the line and the cursor are now in the center of the screen.

Note: The alternate command set uses Escape...Control-L.
CURSOR Command Summary:

Forward Character
CTRL ⌥ F
Forward Word
ESC ⌥ F
Beginning of Line
CTRL ⌥ A
Beginning of Sentence
ESC ⌥ A
Beginning of Paragraph
ESC ⌥ P
Beginning of Document
ESC ⌥ K
Previous Line
CTRL ⌥ P

Backward Character
CTRL ⌥ B
Backward Word
ESC ⌥ B
End of Line
CTRL ⌥ E
End of Sentence
ESC ⌥ E
End of Paragraph
ESC ⌥ N
End of Document
ESC ⌥ >
Next Line
CTRL ⌥ N

SCREEN Command Summary:

View Previous Screen
CTRL ⌥ Z
Exchange Cursor and Mark
CTRL ⌥ X
Center Screen
CTRL ⌥ L

View Next Screen
CTRL ⌥ V

Note: The commands are found on the Reference Card.
Exercise:
Call up Perfect Writer's exercise text, EDITME1.MSS, by typing:

```
A> pw editme1.mss
```

followed by a 'carriage return'

- On this document practice moving the cursor and centering text, using the various cursor commands described above.

EDITME1: Learning the Commands

Probably the best way to learn the Cursor commands is by remembering that the command character represents in most cases the action that the command is supposed to produce: i.e. "F" for forward, "B" for backward, etc.

Notice also that the Control key commands and the Escape key (or Meta) commands are related, in that in many cases the Meta commands simply produce the same action only on a larger scale. For example, "Control ----- F" moves the cursor forward one character, while "Escape ----- F" moves the cursor forward one 'word.' This relationship holds true for a great many of Perfect Writer's commands, not just those that move the cursor. It is a design feature of Perfect Writer that will help you learn the commands quickly.

As you have probably guessed, you don't have to learn all of the commands right away to begin using Perfect Writer. Learn them as you need them. This takes the pressure out of learning about Perfect Writer. For example, you really only need to know FOUR commands to move the cursor anywhere you want (though it will be slow). Which ones are they?†

†They are FORWARD CHARACTER, BACKWARD CHARACTER, PREVIOUS LINE, and NEXT LINE.
It could happen that you will never learn by heart all the commands Perfect Writer offers. But this is all right, because you really don't need to. Some of them you will probably use only rarely, but they are there if you need them. We find that we use nearly all of the commands ourselves, which is why we include them here for you.

Have you removed the Reference Card from your User Manual yet? This card is handy to keep near your keyboard. It provides a very quick reference to all of Perfect Writer's commands.

Practice using the above MOVE SCREEN commands. Jump to the end of the document and the beginning of the document from different locations within the document. Return to your original cursor location using the EXCHANGE CURSOR & MARK COMMAND.
Chapter V
DELETING AND INSERTING

You have found an item to be changed and have moved the cursor to the proper position. Several different delete commands are now available to you. In the following examples note that the material highlighted in reverse will be deleted from your screen.

DELETE Key

This key may be labeled 'DEL,' 'RUBOUT,' or 'BACKSPACE' on your keyboard. It erases the last character typed and moves the cursor back one space.

Note: Material highlighted in reverse is deleted.

DELETE PREVIOUS WORD

This command deletes the first word preceding the cursor. Position the cursor after the word to be deleted. Type the DELETE PREVIOUS WORD command:

Perfect Writer deletes the previous word and moves the cursor and remaining portion of the line to the left.
DELETE NEXT CHARACTER

Deletes the next character after the cursor, moving the remaining characters on the line one space to the left. To delete a character, position the cursor before the character to be deleted. Type the DELETE NEXT CHARACTER command:

![Controls and delete next character diagram]

To continue deleting any number of succeeding characters, continue typing 'D' while depressing the CONTROL key.

DELETE NEXT WORD

Erases the word immediately following the cursor and moves the remaining portion of the line a corresponding number of spaces to the left. To delete a word, position the cursor before the word to be erased. Type the DELETE NEXT WORD command:

![Controls and delete next word diagram]

Note the relationship between Control —D and Escape···D.
DELETE LINE

Deletes all characters from the present position of the cursor to the end of the line. To delete a line, position the cursor at the beginning of the line to be deleted. Type the DELETE LINE command:

Perfect Writer deletes all characters to the right of the cursor. **Note:** Executing the command a second time will erase the blank line itself and move all other lines up one line.

Typing the DELETE LINE command with the cursor placed in the middle of a line will cause only the characters to the right of the cursor to be erased.

†Note: The alternate command set uses Control-—C.
DELETE ENTIRE LINE

Deletes the entire line which the cursor is currently on.

Similar to the DELETE LINE command (Control + K), except that this command deletes text on both sides of the cursor. To delete an entire line, position the cursor anywhere in the line to be deleted. Type the DELETE ENTIRE LINE command:

This is an example, nothing more.

Deletes entire line

Perfect Writer deletes all characters on the line and the line itself.
DELETE SENTENCE FORWARD

Deletes text forward from the position of the cursor to the end of a sentence—i.e., until a period (.), question mark (?), or exclamation mark (!) is reached. To use, position the cursor at the beginning of the sentence to be deleted. Type the DELETE SENTENCE FORWARD command:

```
This is an example, nothing more. • This is an example, nothing more.
```

Deletes entire sentence

All text from the position of the cursor to the end of the sentence is deleted, including the punctuation mark.
YANKBACK—a Safeguard

If you delete anything larger than a character, Perfect Writer saves it temporarily, in case you make a mistake, or change your mind. Your deletion is stored in a 'save buffer' and can be recalled using the YANKBACK command.

The YANKBACK command:

```
CTRL Y
```

Perfect Writer restores the deleted material to the right of the cursor, moving existing text over to make room. If you have moved the cursor, position it again where you want the deleted text to be restored.

**Note: Normally Perfect Writer saves only the most recent deletion.** That is, if you make a deletion, move the cursor, and then make another deletion in another place, the first deletion will be lost! Thus, you must decide to replace a deletion, before continuing to delete other text elsewhere.

This action is reflected in the Mode Line. Upon saving a deletion Perfect Writer displays a plus-sign, '+' in the Mode Line. As long as this '+' is present, Perfect Writer is continuing to save sequential deletions that you make. When the '+' disappears, the saving process has ended. Any further deletions that you make after the '+' has disappeared will cause the previous deletions to be lost! (See Chapter XI, page 126.)

The YANKBACK command is used in copying and moving portions of text either within a document, or between documents. For a discussion of this function, see Chapter XI.
The WIPE REGION Command

Erases an entire block of text at one time. Before the command can be executed, the region to be erased must be identified by boundary marks, using the MARK BOUNDARIES procedure (steps 1-3 following):

Steps:
1. Place the cursor on the first character in the region to be erased.
2. Set the forward boundary mark by typing the MARK SET command, which will be one of the following (whichever works for your terminal†):

![Keyboard Emoticons]

Mark Set

This is an example, nothing more. This is an example, nothing more. This is an example, nothing more. This is an example, nothing more. This is an example, nothing more.
50 Deleting and Inserting

†Also try:

One of these commands will cause Perfect Writer to respond with the message "Mark Set" in the Echo Line, indicating that a forward invisible boundary mark has been set at the beginning of the region to be erased. (This message will disappear when you move the cursor to set the other boundary.)

3. Move the cursor to the end of the region to be erased, placing it just after the last character. The cursor constitutes the rear boundary marker.

4. Type the WIPE REGION command:

Perfect Writer removes the region of text between the invisible mark and the cursor.
MARK WHOLE PARAGRAPH Command

Defines or marks the paragraph which the cursor is in. It places the mark at the end and the cursor at the beginning of the paragraph. It is used with the WIPE REGION and YANKBACK command for copying or moving paragraphs. Position the cursor anywhere within a paragraph. Type the MARK WHOLE PARAGRAPH command:

Entering the WIPE REGION command

will remove the paragraph.

Entering the YANKBACK command

will restore the paragraph.

If the cursor is moved somewhere else and the YANKBACK command given, the deleted paragraph will be inserted at the cursor position. It is also possible to switch to a different buffer and copy the deleted paragraph into the different buffer.

Note: the deleted text is now restored
INSERTING

Perfect Writer automatically inserts new words and characters into your text as you type them, moving all original text to the right.

The following steps should be routinely followed when inserting new text:

1. Move the cursor to the point in the text where the new material is to be inserted.
2. Begin typing the insertion.
3. If you find it annoying to watch adjacent text being shifted as you insert, execute the OPEN INSERT command, which will create a new blank line for your insertion. With cursor at the point of insertion, type the OPEN INSERT command:

Before

This is an example, nothing more. This is an example, nothing more.

CTRL 0

After

This is an example, nothing more. This is an example, nothing more.
Perfect Writer creates a new blank line for your insertion, by placing an invisible ‘newline’ character just ahead of the cursor. To close lines again following the insertion, type the CLOSE INSERT command:

![Command Diagram]

This is an example, and absolutely nothing else more.
This is an example, nothing more.

4. Following your insertion, adjust the paragraph to which text has been added, by typing the ADJUST TEXT command. Place the cursor anywhere inside the paragraph to be adjusted.

Notice how “more” has been placed on the next line to have a smooth right edge on the text.

![Command Diagram]

This is an example, and absolutely nothing else more. This is an example, nothing more.

Perfect Writer automatically ‘fills’ short lines and ‘wraps’ longer lines in order to make the text uniform.
The INSERT FILE Command

Perfect Writer allows you to insert a file anywhere in your document. Simply position the cursor where you want the file inserted and enter:

```
CTRL X I
```

Perfect Writer will respond in the Echo Line:

```
File to Insert[CR]:
```

Enter the filename and press the carriage return. Perfect Writer will insert the file into your current file buffer at the position of the cursor. The cursor is left at the end of the inserted file. The inserted file is also placed in the temporary storage buffer and can be ‘yanked back’ elsewhere.
DELETE AND INSERT Command Summary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Description</th>
<th>Key Sequence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Delete Previous Character</td>
<td><code>DEL</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete Next Character</td>
<td><code>CTRL-D</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete to End of Line</td>
<td><code>CTRL-K</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete Sentence Forward</td>
<td><code>ESC</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark Set</td>
<td><code>CTRL-SPACE</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wipe Region</td>
<td><code>CTRL-W</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yankback</td>
<td><code>CTRL-Y</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open Insert</td>
<td><code>CTRL-O</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insert File</td>
<td><code>CTRL-X</code> <code>I</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete Previous Word</td>
<td><code>ESC-DEL</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete Next Word</td>
<td><code>ESC-D</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete Entire Line</td>
<td><code>ESC-CTRL-K</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark Whole Paragraph</td>
<td><code>ESC-H</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close Insert</td>
<td><code>ESC-CTRL-O</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The commands are found on the Reference Card.

†The alternate command set uses Control-----C.
Exercise:

Call up Perfect Writer's exercise text, "EDITME2.MSS" from CP/M by typing:

```
A>pw editme2.mss
```

followed by a carriage return

On this text practice deleting and restoring words and sentences:

1. Delete the first six characters of the first line. Can you 'yank' them back? (No, because Perfect Writer does not save individual characters.)
2. Delete the first two words, using the DELETE NEXT WORD or DELETE PREVIOUS WORD commands. Can you yank these words back? (Yes! Perfect Writer temporarily saves deletions that are larger than a single character.)
3. Delete a line or portion of a line giving the DELETE LINE command. (Notice that if the cursor is in the middle of a line only the characters to the right of the cursor are deleted.)
4. Delete an entire line, after first positioning the cursor at the end of the line.
5. Delete a sentence.
6. Delete the first seven lines, afterwards restoring them using the YANKBACK command.
7. Delete the entire document! Which of the MARK SET commands work for your terminal?
EDITME2: Practicing Deletions

Mark Twain gave probably the best advice ever on writing and editing when he said "When in doubt, strike it out!"

Of course, Mark Twain did not have Perfect Writer then to help him delete things. He certainly would have been amazed at how quickly and neatly deletions from a text can be made now. No more having to work around lines that have been 'eX'd out.' No more having to write back IN something you have mistakenly scratched over. (Perfect Writer temporarily saves all deletions larger than a single character.)

Note that the Meta (or Escape) and Control commands share for the most part the same relationship here as they did for moving the cursor. That is, while a Control ----- D will delete the next character, Escape ----- D will delete the next word.

Again, you don't have to learn all the commands at once. A few to start will serve you well for a long time.

When you are finished enter the QUIT command:
Chapter VI
STORING YOUR TEXT

Introduction

You have finished creating and editing a document, and now wish to have Perfect Writer save it for later editing and printing. Perfect Writer will save your document as a 'file,' identifying it with a unique 'filename.' In saving your document as a file, Perfect Writer creates in effect a 'master copy' of the document, which cannot thereafter be erased or destroyed unless you specifically request it.

When you wish to edit a document you have previously saved, Perfect Writer places a copy of that document into a temporary working space for you. **Whatever changes you make to this copy do not affect your original.**

When you have finished editing the copy, you have the option of either: replacing the original with the newly edited copy, or of saving the copy in a new file by itself, thereby retaining **both** versions of your document.
File Names

Your operating system requires that file names follow a particular form. Specifically, file names cannot be longer than eight (8) characters, and cannot contain any of the following: `> < . , ; : = ? * _`. It is helpful when creating file names to be as inventive as possible. Some examples of file names are:

- `CHAPTER3.MSS` (Chapter three of your book)
- `MAYDIARY.MSS` (May entries of your diary)
- `JSSMITH.MSS` (The "J S Smith" file)

Default File Name

Should you neglect to supply a filename, Perfect Writer will supply a 'default' filename, one that is easily recognized: "NAME.ME." This filename indicates that the document contained in it has not been given a name.

**Important:** The 'NAME.ME' file is a temporary 'back-up' file into which Perfect Writer will continue to store unnamed documents. However, each time it stores a document, it *overwrites whatever may have been stored there previously*. Don’t risk losing your documents by not giving them file names!

As a reminder of which document you are working with, Perfect Writer displays the current file name in the Mode Line. If you have not yet named the document, the default filename, 'NAME.ME,' will be displayed.
Creating A New File

You can create a new file at the time you enter the Perfect Writer system, simply by selecting to 'edit a file' from the main selection menu. For example, from the main menu:

```
Enter: e
```

![Perfect Writer Main Selection Menu]

Selections:
- E—Edit a file
- F—Format a file
- P—Print a formatted file
- S—Check the spelling of a file
- D—Look at the directory on a disk
- Z—Delete (erase) a file
- R—Rename a file
- C—Send a command line
- X—Exit from this menu

Type one character to indicate your selection now.
Your pleasure:(E, F, P, D, Z, R, C, X)
Perfect Writer will respond

What is the name of the file you wish to edit?

Enter: THISFILE.MSS [CR]*

"THISFILE.MSS" is the name of a new file you wish to create. When Perfect Writer comes on-line, it will present you with a blank screen, ready for whatever document you wish to enter into "THISFILE.MSS". The Mode Line will appear as follows:

Perfect Writer (Fill) thisfile:THISFILE.MSS 0%
FILE COMMANDS

The following commands instruct Perfect Writer to retrieve or save files:

The READ FILE Command

Retrieves a stored file document and places it in the buffer currently being used, overwriting whatever document is presently there. (Useful for 'starting over' in the editing of a document.)

Steps:

1. At any time during editing type the READ FILE command:

   \[
   \text{CTRL} \quad \text{X} \quad \text{CTRL} \quad \text{R}
   \]

   If the document currently being edited has not yet been saved (via the SAVE FILE command or the WRITE FILE command), Perfect Writer responds with the message:

   \[
   \text{Discard Modifications you have made?}
   \]

2. Typing "NO" cancels the command and returns you to your place in the text (in essence giving you the opportunity to save the current document.)
3. Typing "YES" causes Perfect Writer to respond with the message:

```
File To Read[CR]:
```

4. Type the name of the file you wish Perfect Writer to retrieve. Perfect Writer will read the named file into the current buffer, overwriting whatever document is there.

**The SAVE FILE Command**

Immediately copies the document being edited to the disk file identified in the Mode Line. (This command, if used frequently, guards against accidental losses of the text being edited.) At any time during the editing process, type the SAVE FILE command:

```
CTRL X CTRL S
```

Perfect Writer immediately copies your document to the disk file named in the Mode Line, **overwriting your original** or whatever version of the document was there before. The system message 'Writing' is displayed briefly, followed by 'File Written.'

After safely storing your document Perfect Writer returns you to the text to continue editing.

**Note:** Using the SAVE FILE command causes the original 'master' copy of the document, if one existed, to be overwritten. Also, if you should get a "BDOS ERROR ON DISK" message, which means that Perfect Writer has encountered some problem with the disk (perhaps it is faulty), hit the "Enter" key, or the GO BACK command (Control ----- G). This will hopefully restore you to your file in the Editing Mode of Perfect Writer. When the "File Written" message appears, either copy the file using a different filename (see the next command), or copy it onto a different disk.
The WRITE FILE Command

Saves the document currently being edited. However, this command gives you the option of either overwriting the old 'master' copy, or of storing your updated document in a different file under a new name. At any time during editing, type the WRITE FILE command:

```
CTRL X CTRL W
```

Perfect Writer responds with the following message in the Echo Line:

```
File To Write[CR]: ___
```

You have two options:

**Option 1**: You can create a new and different file, and Perfect Writer will store the document in that file. [Type the new filename followed by a 'carriage return.‘]

**Option 2**: You can instruct Perfect Writer to overwrite the old 'master' copy. [Simply type a 'carriage return.‘] Perfect Writer immediately copies your document into the file identified in the Mode Line, overwriting what was previously stored there. (This second option is identical to the SAVE FILE command.)
Retrieving Your File

There are several methods of retrieving documents that have been stored as files. However, in this Basic section we will present only one, which must be used at the time you enter the Perfect Writer system.

Basic File Retrieval

You are about to enter Perfect Writer and wish to edit a file that you have previously saved.

Steps:

1. Consult your system directory for the correct name of the file you wish to retrieve. [A >dir]
2. Type the filename after the DOS command calling up Perfect Writer:

   A> pw thisfile.mss[CR]

   Perfect Writer will retrieve the file and present it to you on the screen. As we discussed earlier, you could also retrieve THISFILE.MSS through the menu program [option e].
Chapter VII
PRINTING A DOCUMENT

Introduction

You have finished writing and editing a document and have saved it under a specific file name. You now wish to print it.

Perfect Writer offers two print options: A 'Full Feature' print option, and a 'Quick Print' option. The former allows use of all the typeface commands and the microspacing features your printer is capable of. The Quick Print option allows you to print your document exactly as you have created it on the console screen. In the beginning as you are learning about Perfect Writer, you will probably use the Quick Print option most often, finding it both satisfactory and convenient for a good many of your printing needs. However, when your printing requires any of the special typeface formats, microspacing or proportional spacing, you should use the Full Feature print option.

In their procedures, both print options are closely related, except that the Quick Print option 'shortcuts' a few steps. In this discussion we will first present the Full Feature print option to insure that you understand the basic procedures involved in printing a document, followed by the steps necessary to produce a 'quick print.'

In printing, Perfect Writer invokes two internal programs called "Perfect Formatter" and "Perfect Printer." Working together these two programs prepare and output the final version of your document. The menu options presented in this section represent the selections available to you when using these two programs.
THE FULL FEATURE PRINT OPTION

The Full Feature print option allows you to use all of the formatting and printing features provided by Perfect Writer, including:

- use of either a continuous form feed printer or a single sheet feed printer,
- the printing of multiple copies,
- the ability to start printing at any page of your document,
- use of all of the type face format commands.

STEP 1. Call up Perfect Writer's Main Selection Menu by entering:

A> menu[CR]
Perfect Writer will present the Main Selection Menu:

Perfect Writer

Main Selection Menu

(C) 1983 Perfect Software, Inc.

Selections:
E—Edit a file
F—Format a file
P—Print a formatted file
S—Check the spelling of a file
D—Look at the directory on a disk
Z—Delete (erase) a file
R—Rename a file
C—Send a command line
X—Exit from this menu

Type one character to indicate your selection now.
Your pleasure: (E, F, P, S, D, Z, R, C, X)

STEP 2. Before any document can be printed, it must be formatted. For this example we are assuming that our file would not previously have been formatted. Therefore our selection here would be "F—Format a File." Simply type the letter "F".

Perfect Writer will respond:

Type the name of the file you wish to format below.

>
STEP 3. Enter the document’s filename. You need not include the extension ".mss" since Perfect Writer will assume this. Also, if the file is on a different disk drive than the program disk containing Perfect Writer (which is the usual situation), then do not forget to specify the drive the document is on. For example:

Type the name of the file you wish to format below.

>yourfile

Perfect Writer transfers you to the Perfect Formatter Selection Menu:

(P) 1983 Perfect Software, Inc.

Available options for the formatter are:

C—Send the output to the console device
D—Format for a different device type
P—Send the output to the printer device
O—Name the output file differently
V—Make the top level environment verbatim instead of text (verbatim causes the output to appear as it does on the screen)
A—Pause for manual insertion of each sheet of paper
G—Start formatting now
X—Return to the top level of the menu

pf yourfile

Your pleasure: (C, D, P, O, V, A, T, G, X)
When formatting your document Perfect Formatter will create a new intermediate file called a "FIN-file," standing for "FINished" or "FINal." (This file can be identified on your directory by the "FIN" extension that has been attached to the filename.) The "FIN-file" is used later by Perfect Printer in printing your document. This selection menu presents the several options available in the creation and subsequent use of this "FIN-file." Several require further explanation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Sent output to the console. (That is, while creating the formatted &quot;FIN-file,&quot; display it concurrently on the console. With this option no FIN-file will be produced.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Format for a different device. (Normally the FIN-file will be created to meet specifications of the default printing device you have specified during configuration. However, this option allows you to format the file for any alternate device you have defined to Perfect Writer [see Chapter XVIII, page 219].)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Send output to the Printer. (This is the Quick Print option. When this option is selected then no FIN-file is produced. Like the &quot;C&quot; option, this option prints the file while formatting it.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>Name the output file differently. (This option allows you to give the outputted FIN-file a different name. For example, when formatted &quot;yourfile.mss&quot; might become &quot;thatfile.fin&quot;.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>Make Verbatim the top environment. (This option allows you to change the format environment from TEXT to VERBATIM [see Chapter XIV, page 154].) With this option the printed output appears on paper as it does on the screen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
It is possible to select more than one of these options. Each one that you select will be "echoed" in the menu Echo Line. For example:

```
pf -c -text yourfile
```

Note here that Perfect Writer echoes the name of your file in the menu Echo Line, along with the 'pf' command (which can be used to invoke Perfect Formatter directly without using the menu system.)

STEP 4. For this example, let us assume that we wish only to format the file without selecting any special options. We would select "G—Start formatting now."

Perfect Formatter automatically creates a "FIN-file," storing it on disk.

---

1The Perfect Writer menu program has been designed to make Perfect Writer easier for you to use. However, it is not necessary to use the menu program and after acquiring experience with Perfect Writer you may find it an unnecessary aid. To assist you in learning how to use Perfect Writer without the menu program, all commands issued by the menu program are echoed on the screen. What you accomplish using the menu program could also have been achieved by directly entering the commands echoed in the menu. If you enter the commands directly you would save the time it takes to call into your computer's memory the menu program and the time it takes to switch out. You may elect to delete the menu program at any time without affecting the performance of Perfect Writer.
STEP 5. Following formatting you will be transferred back to the Main Selection Menu of Perfect Writer. You are now ready to print your document. Select "P — Print a Formatted File."

Perfect Writer responds in the menu Echo Line:

Type below the name of the formatted file you wish to print
> yourfile[CR]

STEP 6. Enter the name of your file WITHOUT the extension. (Remember that Perfect Formatter has just created a new, intermediate, formatted file and labeled it "YOURFILE.FIN". When printing this file Perfect Printer will assume the ".FIN" extension. If your file has not been formatted and assigned the ".FIN" extension, then it will not be printed.) Enter:

> Thisfile [CR]
Perfect Writer transfers you to the Perfect Printer Selection Menu:

(Perfect Writer) Perfect Printer Selection Menu
(C) 1983 Perfect Software, Inc.
Available options for Perfect Printer are:
   N—Start printing at a page other than page 1
   O—Send to a different output port than the default
   P—Pause for manual insertion of each sheet of paper
   C—Print multiple copies of the file
   G—Start printing the file now
   X—Return to the top level of the menu

pp yourfile
Your pleasure: (N, O, P, C, G, X)

This menu presents the various options that are available to you during printing. You can select more than one option, but not all. Selecting too many options will result in a "warning" from Perfect Writer saying it cannot do all that you ask. The options are:

**Where to Begin Printing:** It is possible to begin printing in the middle of a document. This option allows you to specify the page on which printing is to begin.

**Use Different Output Port:** This would be used if you had a serial as well as a parallel printer connected.

**Single Sheet Printing:** If you select this option Perfect Printer will "pause" between pages and allow you to insert a fresh sheet of paper before continuing.

**Multiple Copies:** If you wish to print more than one copy of the document, you will be asked to specify the number of copies.
Your selections will be "echoed" in the menu Echo Line, along with your filename and the command that can be used to invoke Perfect Printer. For example:

```
pp :page 2 -3 -pause yourfile
```

STEP 7. When you have selected the printing options, select the option that will commence printing of the document:

"G — Start printing the file now"

Perfect Printer will clear the screen and respond with the message:

```
Perfect Printer
1983 Perfect Software, Inc.
Printing 'YOURFILE.FIN' on device 'YOURPRINTER' — OK?
```

Enter "Y".

As it prints your document, Perfect Printer will echo the page number of the page it is printing on the screen of your terminal. After your document has been printed, Perfect Printer will return you to the Main Selection Menu of Perfect Writer.
THE QUICK PRINT OPTION

The Quick Print option is similar to Full Feature Print Option, except that it does not allow printing to begin in the middle of a document nor does it allow the printing of multiple copies. Further, it will NOT permit the use of typeface commands. The first three steps of the Quick Print option are identical with the Full Feature print option.

STEP 1. Call up the Perfect Writer menu system by typing:

```
A>menu[CR]
```

Perfect Writer will respond with the Main Selection Menu:

```
Perfect Writer
(C) 1983 Perfect Software, Inc.
Selections:
E—Edit a file
F—Format a file
P—Print a formatted file
S—Check the spelling of a file
D—Look at the directory on a disk
Z—Delete (erase) a file
R—Rename a file
C—Send a command line
X—Exit from this menu
Type one character to indicate your selection now.
Your pleasure:(E, F, P, S, D, Z, R, C, X) •
```
STEP 2. Select "F—Format a File".
Perfect Writer will respond:

Type the name of the file you wish to format below.
>

STEP 3. Enter the name of your file, with or without the extension ".MSS"

Type the name of the file you wish to format below.
>yourfile[CR]

Perfect Writer will transfer you to the Perfect Formatter Selection Menu:

(Part Writer) Perfect Formatter Selection Menu
(C) 1983 Perfect Software, Inc.
Available options for the formatter are:
C—Send the output to the console device
D—Format for a different device type
P—Send the output to the printer device
O—Name the output file differently
V—Make the top level environment verbatim instead of text (verbatim causes the output to appear as it does on the screen)
A—Pause for manual insertion of each sheet of paper
G—Start formatting now
X—Return to the top level of the menu

pf yourfile
Your pleasure: (C, D, P, O, V, A, T, G, X)
STEP 4. Until now the steps for the Quick Print option have been essentially the same as the Full Feature print option. At this point however, the Quick Print option requires that you make only two selections, in this order:

a) Select "P—Send the output to the printer". This selection will be echoed in the menu Echo Line:

```
   pf -p yourfile
```

b) Select "G—Start formatting now".

Perfect Writer will clear your screen and display the message:

```
   Perfect Formatter
   (C) 1982 Perfect Software, Inc.
```

The printer will begin printing your document. As it is printed Perfect Writer will echo the current page it is printing on your terminal. When your document is finished printing Perfect Writer will return you to the Main Selection Menu.

Selecting the Quick Print option instructs Perfect Formatter to print your document WHILE it is being formatted. That is to say, the "FIN-file" is being outputted directly to your printer. Perfect Writer's internal program "Perfect Printer" which allows printing of multiple documents and use of the typeface commands is being bypassed altogether.
STOP PRINTING

Typing the GO BACK (or CANCEL) command at the console at any time during the printing operation will cause Perfect Writer to stop printing the current file document.

EXERCISE

Print Perfect Writer's practice document "LETTER1.MSS", shown below. Send this letter to a friend by editing it appropriately. Save it, using the SAVE FILE command (Control ---- X Control ---- S). Finally, print your changes using the printing procedures just outlined.

[enter your return address, Anytown, Anystate, ZIP]

Dear [Your friend's name]:

Surprise! Here's a letter to you in the middle of the day. Actually it's just a practice letter. What I'm doing is testing our new word processor, Perfect Writer, which we've just installed. Of course, you know we've had word processors here before. But let me tell you Perfect Writer is different! (Wow! What a difference! Where has this thing been all my life?!) Let me tell you about it:

It includes all the standard writing and editing features you might expect on a word processor: a variety of commands that quickly and easily move the cursor; simple deleting and inserting procedures; safe and convenient routines to store the material you've just created.
But besides this it offers several really wonderful features I haven't seen before, like: being able to divide the screen into two separate parts, each of which can hold a different document. Using this 'split-screen' you can edit one letter based upon information in another. You can even transfer sections of text between the two. Or you can simply use the two screens to compare two different versions of the same text to see which is better. Can you imagine all that?!

But there's more...

Perfect Writer uses something called 'virtual memory,' which means that you don't have to worry any more how long the document is that you want to write and edit. With Perfect Writer I can edit anything from a memorandum to a book! As well, cursor commands allow me to view instantly any part of the document I wish, no matter how long it is. I think that is utterly fantastic.

As far as printing goes, Perfect Writer offers two print options. The first is just your basic printer, which will quickly reproduce on paper whatever you've just created on the screen.

However, when you need to get fancy and 'perfect,' especially with long documents (Oh, don't we love to do those over and over again!), Perfect Writer offers a system that literally does the formatting for you. No more having to set tabs, margins, indentions, or to keep track of paging, footnotes, index entries—all that stuff!

All you have to do is to tell Perfect Writer, with a brief, easily understood command, how you want to format any particular portion of text: as a list, a chapter heading, a quotation, an address, an example—there are more than 50 formatting options provided.

Perfect Writer automatically does what needs doing—centers it, boldfaces it, underlines it, indents it, italicizes it, numbers it, single or double spaces it—whatever! Any changes you might make later are automatically incorporated—say, if you add another footnote or an extra chapter section. These changes are automatically reflected in the Table of Contents and alphabetized index which Perfect Writer automatically produces. Can you believe all this?

I know that this description must make you think that Perfect Writer is something out of the twenty-first century...!

But to top it off, Perfect Writer is EASY TO LEARN!
The people we ordered it from claim that it is the most advanced word processing system available, written in the most advanced computer language and modeled after the world's most powerful word processor that has until now only been available on large computers. This scared me at first because I imagined I'd have to go through some awful process of learning a complicated computer language—you know, something like 'Fortran' or something.

But this wasn't the case with Perfect Writer. Even though it has a large and flexible set of commands, they're not difficult to learn. In fact, for what they accomplish, they're a lot more understandable and sensible than all the other systems I've seen.

Too, the manual that accompanies Perfect Writer is READABLE! I can actually understand what it's talking about, and it's easy to find things if I have a question. (You know how incomprehensible some of this stuff is they try to sell you!)

(Perfect Writer must be easy to learn if in just one day I've learned to do all this!)

Whew! This is some letter. You can see how enthusiastic I am. I guess for the first time in a long time I feel that I'm learning some new and valuable skill—because these computers are here to stay. (As far as I'm concerned they didn't get here a moment too soon!)

I could go on, but listen, why don't you ride the elevator down during lunch and I'll show you what Perfect Writer will do. Then you can start lobbying for one in your department, too. If this place needs one thing, it's more Perfect Writers working for it.

Yours,
Printing a Document
Chapter VIII
MODES AND ADDITIONAL COMMANDS

Modes of Operation

When you begin editing Perfect Writer provides you with a standard editing mode called "fill." In the Fill Mode lines are 'wrapped' when the text you are entering goes beyond the right margin (also called the "fill column"). That is to say, the words that would otherwise extend beyond the right margin are brought back to start a new line, i.e. "wrapped." This makes your text appear neat and orderly on the screen, and there is no need to continually monitor line lengths as you would with a typewriter.

In addition to the Fill Mode, Perfect Writer offers several other editing 'modes.' These additional modes provide features that you may want to use while editing. If so, you can select the particular mode you want with the mode selection commands.

Except for 'Normal Mode,' all of the modes listed below represent modes of functioning that can be ADDED to the standard Fill Mode, which is to say, that Fill Mode will continue to function even though the new mode has been added.

Modes Available

Fill Mode

Perfect Writer provides the Fill Mode as the standard editing mode. When you enter Perfect Writer you will begin in the Fill Mode. The major feature of the Fill Mode is that words are wrapped around to the beginning of the next line after you reach the right margin (termed the fill column).

Normal Mode

Normal Mode turns off the 'word wrap' feature of the Fill Mode and allows you to type a line to the right edge of your screen (column 80). It does not automatically wrap text entered. This is a useful feature when you are preparing tables or other text which will not be in the form of paragraphs.
Save Mode

To prevent the inadvertent loss of text entered, Perfect Writer offers the Save Mode. In the Save Mode text is saved (or written on your disk file) after every 512 characters are typed in. The limitation of this mode is that it slows down text entry because it requires a pause while saving the text. When a document becomes several pages long, the saving operation takes longer and is more inconvenient.

View Mode

The View Mode allows you to examine text without being able to alter it. If you want to be sure that a document remains unchanged while you review it with the editor, this is the mode you would select.

Overwrite Mode

Overwrite Mode turns Perfect Writer into a different kind of word processor, where the cursor always moves vertically and typed characters overwrite instead of inserting.

The ADD MODE Command

The following command allows you to add the features of the selected mode. To add a mode, enter:

```
CTRL X M
```

Perfect Writer will respond by asking for the mode name in the Echo Line:

```
Mode Name[CR]:
```

Enter the mode desired and it will be added.
The DELETE MODE Command

To delete a mode simply enter:

```
CTRL X CTRL M
```

Perfect Writer will respond:

```
Delete Mode[CR]:
```

Enter the mode you want to delete and it will be deleted.
The REPEAT Command

Causes other commands (or characters) to repeat. The number of repetitions may be specified, but if it is not, a default value of four (4) is supplied by Perfect Writer, causing the other command to repeat four times.

Steps:
1. Type the UNIVERSAL REPEAT command:

   Perfect Writer responds with the message:

   2. Enter the number of repetitions desired. The default value of '4' repetitions will be replaced with the number that you type.

   3. Enter the command (or character) you wish to have repeated. Perfect Writer immediately repeats the command or character.
Example 1: You wish to draw a line across the page. Type the UNIVERSAL REPEAT command:

```
followed by:
'65' (the width of a page)
followed by:
'-' (a single dash)
```

Perfect Writer will produce a line of dashes across the screen, thus:

```
Argument: 65
```

ESCAPE REPEAT

Typing Escape followed by a number (1,2,3, ... 99) is an alternative method for repeating a command. Thus entering:

```
Escape 65 -
```

would produce the same result as in example 1 above.
The UPPERCASE WORD Command

Changes the characters of a word to uppercase.

Steps:
1. Position the cursor before the word to be 'uppersed.'
2. Type the UPPERCASE WORD command:

   ![ESC U]

   Perfect Writer changes each letter in the word to uppercase and leaves the cursor at the end of the word.

The LOWERCASE WORD Command

Lowercases all letters in the current word. Follow the same procedure used for UPPERCASE WORD command.

   ![ESC L]

The CAPITALIZE WORD Command

Capitalizes the current word. Follow the same procedure used for UPPERCASE WORD command.

   ![ESC C]
The LOCATION Command

Displays the location of the cursor point (in characters from the beginning of the buffer), the length of the buffer in characters, the current column, the location of the mark (in characters from the beginning of the buffer), and the current line number. Enter:

Perfect Writer will respond:

![Diagram showing the location of the cursor, length of file, column, mark, and line number.]
The TRANSPOSE CHARACTERS Command

Switches the character the cursor is on with the character before it, leaving the cursor after the second. Position the cursor on the second of the two characters to be switched. Type the TRANSPOSE CHARACTERS command:

Before

This ePrfect Writer is amazing.

CTRL T

After

This Perfect Writer is amazing.
The **TRANSPOSE WORDS** Command

Transposes the two words before and after the cursor, leaving the cursor after the second. Position the cursor between the two words to be transposed. Type the TRANSPOSE WORDS command:

**Before**

This Writer Perfect is amazing.

**After**

This Perfect Writer is amazing.

**Note:** If the cursor is at the end of a line, the last word on the line is exchanged with the first word on the next line.
The CENTER LINE Command

Centers the word on a line. Position the cursor anywhere on the line and enter the CENTER LINE Command:

This is a Title.

Text is now centered on line.
Part II
ADVANCED EDITING PROCEDURES

In this Section

• Editing Multiple Files
• Split-Screen Editing
• Copying & Moving Text
• Searching
Chapter IX
EDITING MULTIPLE FILES

Introduction

When you wish to edit a document you have previously stored as a file, Perfect Writer retrieves a copy from disk storage and places it into a temporary workspace, called an 'editing buffer.'

In this illustration a file document called 'LETTER.MSS' has been copied into an editing buffer. From the buffer it is being displayed onto the console screen.

Using such a procedure is convenient because changes that you make to the copy do not affect the original version of your document, which remains safely stored on disk. Thus, you can ultimately decide against keeping whatever changes you make and know that your original version is unaltered.

When you have finished editing, you can either replace the original version with the new, or store the new version in a separate file by itself. This, then, is the basic operation of editing a document.

† Buffer is a term used to define the space in the computer's memory where text material is temporarily stored while the computer is on.
Editing Several Files

It is possible to have more than one document at a time in temporary editing buffers, as the following diagram illustrates:

Figure 5: Console screen provides a separate window on two different documents.

In this illustration, two files have been copied into editing buffers from disk storage. One is being displayed on the console screen, while the other is waiting to be displayed.

Up to seven documents can be held at one time in temporary editing buffers. As we shall see, the use of multiple buffers allows easy comparison and editing of documents, and especially easy transfer of text between documents.
Buffer Names

Every editing buffer temporarily assumes a name when in use. This name is the name of the last file from which or to which a document has been copied. If the document in the buffer is new and has not yet been named, the default name 'NAME.ME' is assigned to the buffer.

The buffer takes as its name the first component of the filename. For example, if the file in the buffer is called 'LETTER1.MSS,' the buffer name will be 'LETTER1.' In the Mode Line both the buffer and file names will be displayed, thus:

![Figure 6: Mode Line with buffer names](image-url)
File & Buffer Commands

The following commands allow you to create buffers, delete buffers, copy documents into and out of buffers, switch the viewing screen from one buffer to another, and to list the names of buffers currently in use. You have already learned some of the file manipulation commands in the section on storing, and these commands round out the repertoire of commands you can use to create and manipulate files.

The FIND FILE Command

Retrieves a stored document and places it in a buffer for you to edit. If the document you request is already in a buffer, this command switches you from the buffer currently being used to the buffer containing the document you requested. At any time during editing type the FIND FILE command:

```
CTRL X CTRL F
```

Perfect Writer responds with the message:

```
File to Find [CR]:
```

Enter the name of the file followed by a carriage return. Perfect Writer retrieves the file and places it in a buffer for you to view.
Note: In retrieving a file from storage Perfect Writer always attempts to place the file in a buffer which has the same name. If you request a file whose name is associated with a buffer that is already in use, Perfect Writer will display the message: "Buffer in Use! Name of Buffer to Use?[CR]:". This circumstance often arises when requesting a second 'original' copy of a document you have been editing, in order to compare the changes you have been making.

For example, you have been editing a file document named 'LETTER1.MSS' in a buffer called 'LETTER1.' You wish to examine the original version of the document, which, of course, is also called 'LETTER1.MSS.' Using the FIND FILE command you get the message "Buffer in Use! Name of Buffer to Use?[CR]:"

Perfect Writer in retrieving a second copy of the original 'LETTER1.MSS' has attempted to place it in a buffer which it wants to name 'LETTER1'—only to find that such a buffer name already exists!

When this situation arises, you must supply a different buffer name in which to place the second copy of the document. If you answer with only a carriage return, Perfect Writer will use the old buffer (and destroy anything that was in it). If you want to keep the old buffer, then you might enter: 'LETTER1a' as a new buffer name.

Further Note: The FIND FILE command is useful in creating new files. If the file you request does not exist, Perfect Writer will create a new file in an empty buffer, whose name will be the first component of the filename you have been given.
The SWITCH BUFFERS Command

Allows you to switch between buffers actively in use, or to create a new blank buffer for entering a new document. Type the SWITCH BUFFERS command:

```
CTRL X B
```

Perfect Writer will respond in the Echo Line with:

```
This is the contents of letter 1 buffer.

Perfect Writer (Fill) letter1: LETTER1.MSS 100%
Switch to Buffer[CR]:
```

Enter the name of the buffer you wish to use, followed by a carriage return. (Remember: the buffer name is only the first portion of the filename.) Perfect Writer switches you to the buffer you have named. For example, if you enter: memo[CR] Perfect Writer will switch you to the buffer named "memo."
This is the contents of the memo buffer which has just been switched to.

Perfect Writer (Fill) memo: MEMO.MSS 100%

**Note:** If the buffer you name does not exist, Perfect Writer will respond with the message:

Create new buffer?[CR]:

"Y" causes Perfect Writer to create a new empty buffer identified by the name you have given, while "N" cancels the original command.

**Further Note:** The **filename** for any new buffer will be the default filename, 'NAME.ME,' and will remain such until you assign it another name, usually when 'writing the file' (see Chapter VI, page 65).

**One More Note:** The SWITCH BUFFERS command can be used to switch back and forth quickly between two buffers, without having to specify the buffer names each time.

If only a carriage return is entered when the message "Switch to Buffer[CR]:" is displayed, Perfect Writer will switch to the buffer that was last switched from.
The BUFFERS DIRECTORY Command

Instructs Perfect Writer to display a directory of all the buffers created during an editing session, together with the names and lengths of the documents they contain, and whether or not these documents have been 'saved.' This command is useful should you forget the names of the buffers that currently exist.

Steps:
1. Type the BUFFERS DIRECTORY command:

```
CTRL X CTRL B
```

Perfect Writer displays in the top left portion of the screen the list of current buffers. For example:

```
buffer name  length  file name
letter1      234     LETTER1.MSS
memo         678     MEMO.MSS
name          123     ~NAME.ME
letter1a      1435    LETTER1A.MSS
```

*asterisk* indicates document has been modified but not saved

*Figure 7: Illustration of buffer directory*

The buffer directory will disappear when you resume editing.
The DELETE BUFFER Command

Deletes a buffer from the set of buffers actively being used. This command is useful in freeing storage space should a "Swap File Full" error message occur (see Appendix E).

Steps:
1. Type the DELETE BUFFER command:

   ![CTRL + X + K]

   Perfect Writer will respond with the message:

   Delete Buffr .[CR]:

2. Type the name of the buffer to be deleted.
Quitting with Multiple Files

When you have finished editing multiple documents and wish to leave the "Writing/Editing" mode of Perfect Writer, typing the QUIT command (Control ---- X, Control ---- C) will, if you have not yet stored or saved any of the documents in active buffers, result in the following message from Perfect Writer:

```
Abandon Modified Buffer(s)?
```

A "yes" will erase all of the modifications you have just made to the current file including any modifications to other files in other buffers. "No" will instruct Perfect Writer to cancel the QUIT command and return you to what you were doing before you issued the QUIT command (giving you the opportunity to save your newly edited or created documents).

To save the documents existing in the various buffers:

1. Enter the BUFFERS DIRECTORY command:

```
CTRL X CTRL B
```

An asterisk, *, beside a buffer name indicates that the document contained in the buffer has not been saved since it was last modified.

2. Switch to the first buffer whose document you wish to save, using the SWITCH BUFFERS command:

```
CTRL X B
```
3. Save the document by giving the SAVE FILE command or the WRITE FILE command, depending on whether you wish to overwrite the old file or whether you wish to create a new file.

**SAVE FILE:**

```
CTRL X CTRL S
```

**WRITE FILE:**

```
CTRL X CTRL W
```

4. Continue switching to various buffers in this way, saving the documents that you wish.

5. Finally, give the QUIT command again, this time 'abandoning' the documents that you did not wish to save.

```
CTRL X CTRL C
```
Chapter X
SPLIT-SCREEN EDITING

Introduction
Perfect Writer offers the unique feature of allowing you to split the screen, or window, appearing on the console into two separate screens, or windows, one atop the other. Using two screens, it is extremely easy to modify one document based upon information in another, or to transfer sections of text from one document to another.

Two Windows
Normally, the single screen window occupies almost all of the screen. In the split-screen option each window occupies a little less than half of the screen, the windows being separated by a row of dashes.

![Figure 8: Illustration of split screen](image-url)
When a second window is created it simply displays an identical copy of the document which was being edited in the original (full-screen) window. The original full-screen window, which still holds the cursor, has become the top window.

Initially both windows will display the same document belonging to the same buffer. Thus, editing changes made in one window will affect the other window also. However, the purpose of split-screen editing is that each window should display a different document held in a separate buffer. When this is the case, editing commands given in one window affect only the document being viewed in that window.

In the illustration to the right, two documents, 'LETTER.MSS' and 'MEMO.MSS,' have been retrieved from disk storage and placed in separate editing buffers, named 'letter' and 'memo' respectively. From these buffers both documents are being viewed on the screen simultaneously. The editing buffers each contain the full contents of their respective files. It should be understood that what are being viewed in the two windows are not just different documents, but the contents of different editing buffers. This is important because it means that you can view and edit simultaneously different portions of the same document. How is this accomplished? — with the TWO WINDOW command.
The following diagram illustrates the use of two windows:

![Diagram showing two documents being edited on a split-screen]

Figure 9: Console screen provides a separate window on two different documents.
WINDOW COMMANDS

The following commands govern the creation and manipulation of two windows:

The TWO WINDOWS Command

Splits the screen, changing one window into two and leaving the cursor in the upper window.

Before

![Before screen divided into two windows]

This is line 1 of the example.
This is line 2 of the example.
This is line 3 of the example.
This is line 4 of the example.
This is line 5 of the example.
This is line 6 of the example.

After

![After screen divided into two windows]

Screen is divided into two windows

This is line 1 of the example.
This is line 2 of the example.
This is line 3 of the example.
This is line 4 of the example.

Note: Initially the text displayed in the lower [second] window will be identical to that displayed in the top window. This is because both windows look into the same editing buffer. Editing changes in one window will, therefore, affect the other window as well.
The ONE WINDOW Command

Ends split screen editing by making whichever window the cursor is occupying the only window on the screen.
The ENLARGE WINDOW Command

Increases the size of the window holding the cursor by one line (thus decreasing by one line the size of the 'other window'.)

Type the ENLARGE WINDOW command:

CTRL X (up arrow)

Note: A window may not be decreased in size to display fewer than three lines.
The **VIEW NEXT SCREEN (Other Window)** Command

Displays the next screen of the window which the cursor is **not** occupying.

---

**Before**

This is the contents of buffer 1.

This is line 1 of buffer 2.
This is line 2 of buffer 2.
This is line 3 of buffer 2.
This is line 4 of buffer 2.

---

**After**

This is the contents of buffer 1.

This is line 3 of buffer 2.
This is line 4 of buffer 2.
This is line 5 of buffer 2.
This is line 6 of buffer 2.

Note how text has scrolled up.
The **VIEW PREVIOUS SCREEN** (Other Window) Command

Displays the previous screen of the window which the cursor is **not** occupying.

Before

This is the contents of buffer 1.

This is line 3 of buffer 2.
This is line 4 of buffer 2.
This is line 5 of buffer 2.
This is line 6 of buffer 2.

After

This is the contents of buffer 1.

This is line 1 of buffer 2.
This is line 2 of buffer 2.
This is line 3 of buffer 2.
This is line 4 of buffer 2.

Note how text has scrolled down.
The OTHER WINDOW Command

Switches the cursor from one window to the other.

Note: The Mode Line will change to reflect the buffer and filename of the new window.
Exercise: Manipulating Two Windows

1. Call up Perfect Writer’s exercise text "EDITME1.MSS" using the READ FILE command:

   CTRL X CTRL R

   followed by:

   EDITME1.MSS [CR]

2. Create two windows, by giving the TWO WINDOWS command:

   CTRL X 2

   The cursor will be in the top window, indicating that you are now editing in that window.

3. Call into the top window Perfect Writer’s exercise text 'EDITME2.MSS,' using the FIND FILE command:

   CTRL X CTRL F

   "EDITME2" will appear in the top window.
4. Practice switching back and forth between the two windows now, by giving the OTHER WINDOW command:

\[ \text{CTRL} \quad X \quad O \] (the letter 'o')

Notice the following:
- The Mode Line reflects the window that the cursor is in by displaying the correct document filename.
- When entering a window, the cursor returns to the position that it had occupied previously when in that window.

5. Practice changing the screen in the window which the cursor is not occupying, i.e. the 'other window,' using the VIEW NEXT SCREEN (OTHER WINDOW) command and the VIEW PREVIOUS SCREEN (OTHER WINDOW) command:

**VIEW NEXT SCREEN:**

\[ \text{CTRL} \quad X \quad \text{CTRL} \quad V \]

**VIEW PREVIOUS SCREEN:**

\[ \text{CTRL} \quad X \quad \text{CTRL} \quad Z \]

6. Enlarge one window, using the ENLARGE WINDOW command:

\[ \text{CTRL} \quad X \quad \text{^} \] (up arrow)
7. After you have enlarged one window (and necessarily decreased the other window), switch windows and reverse the process.

8. Finally, end the exercise by creating one window again, using the ONE WINDOW command:

```
CTRL X 1
```

The window which the cursor is occupying will become the only window on the screen.

**Note:** The document in the window that disappeared is still present in another editing buffer. You can easily switch to it giving the SWITCH BUFFER command.

```
CTRL X B
```
Chapter XI
COPYING & MOVING TEXT

Introduction

Perfect Writer provides extremely simple procedures for copying and moving portions of text. Whether text is to be shifted within a single document or between documents, the steps are essentially the same:

• Copy the word, line, or region of text into the 'temporary save buffer,' using an appropriate deletion command.
• Move the cursor to where the material is to be inserted.
• Restore the material from the temporary save buffer using the YANKBACK command.
Moving Text WITHIN a Document

Steps:

1. Remove the text to be shifted from its current position using any one of the following deletion commands:
   - **DELETE PREVIOUS WORD** (Escape . . . Delete Key)
   - **DELETE NEXT WORD** (Escape . . . D)
   - **DELETE LINE** (Control ----- K)
   - **DELETE ENTIRE LINE** (Escape . . . Control ----- K)
   - **WIPE REGION procedure** (which includes):
     1. **MARK BOUNDARIES procedure** (see Chapter V, page 49) or **MARK WHOLE PARAGRAPH** (Escape . . . H)
     2. **WIPE REGION** (Control ----- W)

   Perfect Writer automatically saves the deleted material in the temporary save buffer.

2. Move the cursor to the new location in the document where the material is to be placed.

3. Restore the deleted material using the YANKBACK command:

   ![CTRL Y](image.png)
**Exercise:**

Call up Perfect Writer’s exercise text, "EDITME3.MSS," by typing:

```
CTRL   X   CTRL   R
```

followed by:

```
"editme3.mss" [CR]
```

On this text practice shifting lines and paragraphs:

1. Move the first sentence to just after the paragraph.
2. Move the paragraph to the beginning of the text.
3. Switch sentences two and four.

**EDITME3.MSS: Practicing Moving Text**

This is sentence ONE; it goes after the paragraph.

This is sentence TWO; it will get switched.

This is sentence THREE; it will stay put.

This is sentence FOUR; where does it go?

This is the last paragraph, which is going to be placed at the beginning of the text. That will be a trick. Actually, it is simple: Mark the boundaries, 'Wipe' the region, move the cursor, and 'Yank' it back!
Moving Text BETWEEN Documents

Steps:
1. Create two windows by giving the TWO WINDOWS command:

```
CTRL X 2
```

2. In one window call up the second document you wish to transfer material from, using the FIND FILE command:

```
CTRL X CTRL F
```

3. Remove the text to be shifted using one of the following deletion commands:
   - DELETE PREVIOUS WORD [Escape . . . [Delete Key]]
   - DELETE NEXT WORD [Escape . . . D]
   - DELETE LINE [Control ----- K]
   - DELETE ENTIRE LINE [Escape . . . Control ----- K]
   - DELETE SENTENCE FORWARD [Escape . . . K]
   - WIPE REGION procedure (which includes):
     1. MARK BOUNDARIES procedure (see Chapter V, page 49) or
        MARK WHOLE PARAGRAPH [Escape . . . H]
     2. WIPE REGION [Control ----- W]

Perfect Writer automatically saves the deleted material in the temporary save buffer.
4. Switch to the other window using the OTHER WINDOW command:

\[
\text{CTRL} \quad \text{X} \quad \text{O}
\] (the letter 'o')

5. Move the cursor to the location where the material is to be inserted.
6. Restore the material from the temporary save buffer using the YANKBACK command:

\[
\text{CTRL} \quad \text{Y}
\]

**Exercise:**

Practice shifting text between documents by moving a paragraph between two of Perfect Writer's exercise texts, "EDITME1.MSS" and "EDITME2.MSS."

**Steps:**

1. Call up Perfect Writer's exercise text "EDITME1" by typing the FIND FILE command:

\[
\text{CTRL} \quad \text{X} \quad \text{CTRL} \quad \text{F}
\]

followed by:

\[
\text{editme1.mss} \quad \text{[CR]}
\]
2. Create two windows, using the TWO WINDOWS command:

\[
\text{CTRL} \quad \text{X} \quad 2
\]

3. In the window you are in (the top window) call up Perfect Writer's exercise text "EDITME2" by typing the FIND FILE command (as in step 1).

4. Mark the boundaries of the first paragraph in "EDITME2" using the MARK BOUNDARIES procedure (see Chapter V, page 49), or the MARK WHOLE PARAGRAPH command:

\[
\text{ESC} \quad \text{H}
\]

5. Delete the paragraph into the temporary save buffer, using the COPY REGION command:

\[
\text{ESC} \quad \text{W}
\]

6. Switch to the other window using the OTHER WINDOW command:

\[
\text{CTRL} \quad \text{X} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{[the letter 'o']}
\]

7. Position the cursor at the end of the text "EDITME1."

8. Recall the deleted text from the temporary save buffer using the YANKBACK command:

\[
\text{CTRL} \quad \text{Y}
\]
The COPY REGION Command

When moving text it is often desirable to keep the material to be moved in its original location, even though you wish to copy it to another location as well. This can be accomplished in two ways:

1. By restoring the text in its original location before moving the cursor to the new location. (Once saved in the temporary save buffer, deleted material can be recalled by the YANKBACK command ANY number of times.)

2. By using the COPY REGION command:

**Steps:**
1. Mark the region to be copied using the MARK BOUNDARIES procedure (see Chapter V, page 49), or the MARK WHOLE PARAGRAPH command:

   ![ESC H](image)

2. Copy the region to be moved using the COPY REGION command.

   ![ESC W](image)

   Nothing will appear to have happened except that a plus sign, '+', will appear at the right of the Mode Line, indicating that the region has been copied into the temporary save buffer.

3. Move the cursor to the location where the material is to be inserted.

4. Restore the material from the temporary save buffer using the YANKBACK command:

   ![CTRL Y](image)
GATHERING AND MOVING TEXT

Although deletions are normally accumulated in the temporary save buffer only one group at a time (see discussion, Chapter V, page 48), it is possible to move throughout your text, copying or deleting words, sentences, and paragraphs, and then to replace them as a group at a single location elsewhere.

In order to gather text in this way Perfect Writer must be instructed to continue saving previous text deletions. This is accomplished by using the CONTINUE SAVING command. The following steps illustrate this gathering process:

Steps:

1. Delete or copy into the temporary save buffer the first sentence, paragraph, or region of text to be gathered and moved, using any of the deletion or copy commands:
   - DELETE PREVIOUS WORD (Escape ...... [Delete Key])
   - DELETE NEXT WORD (Escape ...... D)
   - DELETE LINE (Control ----- K)
   - DELETE ENTIRE LINE (Escape ...... Control ----- K)
   - DELETE SENTENCE FORWARD (Escape ...... K)
   - WIPE REGION procedure (which includes):
     1. MARK BOUNDARIES procedure or MARK WHOLE PARA-
        GRAPH (Escape ...... H)
     2. WIPE REGION (Control ----- W)
   - COPY REGION (Escape ...... W)

     The plus-sign, ‘+’, will appear in the Mode Line indicating that your deletion has been saved in the save buffer.

2. Move the cursor to the next deletion.
3. **Your first deletion is now in danger of being lost from temporary storage!** Repositioning the cursor caused Perfect Writer to stop accumulating deletions. Perfect Writer now expects you to restore your first deletion using the YANKBACK command. (Note that the '+' sign in the Mode Line has disappeared.) **Before** making the next deletion you must tell Perfect Writer to continue saving the first deletion. To do this type the CONTINUE SAVING command:

```
ESC ........ CTRL W
```

The '+' sign which had disappeared from the Mode Line has now reappeared, indicating that your previous deletion will be saved along with the deletion you are about to make.

4. Delete or copy into the 'temporary save buffer' the next word, sentence, or region of text to be gathered and moved using any of the deletion or copy commands (see above).

5. In this way continue moving about the text gathering deletions into the temporary save buffer. **REMEMBER: Always give the CONTINUE SAVING command immediately BEFORE making a deletion!**

6. Position the cursor at the location where you wish the gathered material to be inserted.

7. Recall all the deletions you have made from the temporary save buffer using the YANKBACK command:

```
CTRL Y
```

**Note:** The newly grouped material will probably be merged together. You may have to insert spaces between sentences, or add new lines, or even paragraph indentions. As you practice gathering and shifting text, you will see that this can be accomplished during the deleting process, by appending spaces, indentions, or 'newline' characters (all invisible) to your text before deleting it.
Chapter XII
SEARCHING

Several commands are provided that instruct Perfect Writer to search through a
document for an item. Depending upon the command, Perfect Writer will position
the cursor at the item, or will replace the item with another.

The FORWARD SEARCH Command

Instructs Perfect Writer to search forward from the present position of the cur­
sor to the first occurrence of an identified item, and to place the cursor just after
the item.

Steps:

1. Type the FORWARD SEARCH command:

   \[\text{CTRL} \rightarrow \text{S}\]

   Perfect Writer will respond with the message:

   \[\text{Search Forward For[ESC]}: \downarrow\]
2. Enter the characters, word, or string of words you wish to search for. For example:

Search Forward For[ESC]: Perfect Writer is great!

3. Type the Escape key to begin the search.

Perfect Writer searches forward from the position of the cursor to the first occurrence of "Perfect Writer is great!", placing the cursor after "great!"

Note: To search for successive occurrences of an item, continue to type the search command: Control ---- S, Escape. It is not necessary to retype the search string. Perfect Writer will continue to search for the last named item.
The REVERSE SEARCH Command

Instructs Perfect Writer to search backward from the present position of the cursor to the first occurrence of an identified item and to place the cursor just before the item.

Steps:

1. Type the REVERSE SEARCH command:

```
CTRL R
```

Perfect Writer will respond with the message:

```
Reverse Search For[ESC]:
```

2. Enter the characters, word, or string of words you wish to search for. For example:

```
Reverse Search For[ESC]: Easy as pie.
```

3. Type the Escape key to begin the search. Perfect Writer searches backward from the position of the cursor to the first occurrence of "Easy as pie," placing the cursor before "Easy."

Note: To search for successive occurrences of an item, continue to type the search command: Control ----- R, Escape. It is not necessary to retype the search string. Perfect Writer will continue to search for the last named item.
The SEARCH AND REPLACE Command

Causes Perfect Writer to search from the position of the cursor to the end of the text for all occurrences of a character, word, or words, and to replace them with another character, word, or words.

Steps:

1. Position the cursor at the beginning of the text and type the SEARCH AND REPLACE command:

   Perfect Writer responds in the Echo Line:

   ![Diagram of the escape and repeat characters]

   Replace[ESC]: _

2. Then enter the word to replace:

   ![Diagram of the escape and repeat characters]

   with[ESC]: _
For example, if you type the SEARCH AND REPLACE command and enter, "Searching is difficult"

Replace[ESC]: Searching is difficult.

and then, "Searching is easy"

with[ESC]: Searching is easy.

Perfect Writer will search for every occurrence of the word string "Searching is difficult" and replace it with "Searching is easy."
The SEARCH AND REPLACE (With Query) Command

Causes Perfect Writer to search for and replace specified characters or words, beginning at the position of the cursor and continuing to the end of the text. However, at each occurrence of the item to be replaced, Perfect Writer pauses to ask for confirmation of your intent to replace.

Steps:

1. Position the cursor at the beginning of the text and type the SEARCH AND REPLACE (With Query) Command:

   Perfect Writer responds with:

   ![Diagram](image1)

   Query replace[ESC]: [Blank]

2. Enter the characters or words to be replaced, followed by the Escape key. For example:

   ![Diagram](image2)

   Query replace[ESC]: This is interesting.
Perfect Writer will respond:

with [ESC]:

3. Enter the words to be substituted, followed by the Escape key. For example:

with [ESC]: This is marvelous.

Perfect Writer will find the first occurrence of "This is interesting." Before replacing it with "This is marvelous!" it will display the following message in the Echo Line:

Replacing 'This is interesting.' with 'This is marvelous.' Okay?
4. At this point you may select one of several options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Perfect Writer will:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You may:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Give the CANCEL command:</td>
<td>...Cease searching and replacing, leaving the cursor where it was when the CANCEL command was given.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="CTRL + G" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Type a 'period':</td>
<td>...Cease searching and replacing, but return the cursor to the original position where the search command was given.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Period" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Type an exclamation character:</td>
<td>...Replace all remaining occurrences of the item without stopping each time to ask for confirmation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Exclamation" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Type a comma:</td>
<td>...Replaces the old item with the new, and then asks if you are satisfied with the result: &quot;Confirm Replace?&quot; ('Yes' causes Perfect Writer to continue to the next item; 'No' causes the original item to be restored and the search continued.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Comma" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Type 'Y', 'y', or {space}:</td>
<td>...Replace the present item and continue the search.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Y" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Type {any other key}:</td>
<td>...Will not replace the present item, but will continue the search for the next item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Any other key" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Not Found

If an item is not found, the message "Not found" will appear at the left of the Echo Line. However, the cursor will be left after the closest match it could find.

Uppercase vs. Lowercase

A lowercase letter in the word or string of words to be searched will find and match either a lowercase letter or an uppercase letter in the text. However, an uppercase letter will find and match only an uppercase letter. Example:

coffee will find and match coffee and COFFEE
COFFEE will find and match only COFFEE

Mismatches

Perfect Writer searches for and matches strings of characters. Instructed to search for the word 'the' in the text, it will find and match such words as: 'thesis,' 'theatre,' and 'father.' To eliminate such mismatching enclose the word to be searched in 'blanks,' using the space bar, for example:

(space)the(space)

Though a blank space is invisible, Perfect Writer nevertheless recognizes it as a character.
Part III
DOCUMENT DESIGN

In this Section:

• Overview
• Environment Format Commands
• List Format Commands
• Typeface Commands
• Document Sectioning and Organization
• Tools for Form Letter Design
• Document Style Commands
• Lessons
### ENVIRONMENT COMMANDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADDRESS</td>
<td>XIV-160</td>
<td>INDENT</td>
<td>XIV-177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CENTER</td>
<td>XIV-159</td>
<td>ITEMIZE</td>
<td>XIV-170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLOSING</td>
<td>XIV-160</td>
<td>LEVEL</td>
<td>XIV-164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DESCRIPTION</td>
<td>XIV-172</td>
<td>QUOTATION</td>
<td>XIV-158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISPLAY</td>
<td>XIV-178</td>
<td>TEXT</td>
<td>XIV-154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENUMERATE</td>
<td>XIV-168</td>
<td>UNDENT</td>
<td>XIV-176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>XIV-157</td>
<td>VERBATIM</td>
<td>XIV-156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLUSHLEFT</td>
<td>XIV-162</td>
<td>VERSE</td>
<td>XIV-174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLUSHRIGHT</td>
<td>XIV-162</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TYPEFACE COMMANDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BOLDFACE</td>
<td>XV-179</td>
<td>SUBSCRIPT</td>
<td>XV-182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOLD ITALIC</td>
<td>XV-181</td>
<td>SUPERSCRIPT</td>
<td>XV-182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITALIC</td>
<td>XV-181</td>
<td>TYPEWRITER</td>
<td>XV-183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ONE-WORD</td>
<td>XV-183</td>
<td>UNDERSCORE</td>
<td>XV-180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROMAN</td>
<td>XV-183</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNNUMBERED HEADINGS</td>
<td>NUMBERED HEADINGS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNNUMBERED</td>
<td>XVI—186</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAJORHEADING</td>
<td>XVI—186</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEADING</td>
<td>XVI—186</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBHEADING</td>
<td>XVI—187</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CHAPTER</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SECTION</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SUBSECTION</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PARAGRAPH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>APPENDIX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>APPENDIXSECTION</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ORGANIZATION**

| INDEX               | XVI—193           |
| FOOT                | XVI—194           |
| NOTE                | XVI—195           |
| PAGEHEADING         | XVI—196           |
| PAGEFOOTING         | XVI—196           |

**TOOLS FOR FORM LETTER DESIGN**

| BLANKPAGE           | XVII—208          |
| BLANKSPACE          | XVII—209          |
| CASE                | XVII—201          |
| COMMENT             | XVII—207          |
| INCLUDE             | XVII—204          |
| MESSAGE             | XVII—205          |
| NEWPAGE             | XVII—210          |
| REF                 | XVII—216          |
| SET                 | XVII—216          |
| STRING              | XVII—211          |
| TITLE               | XVII—215          |
| VALUE               | XVII—211          |
Chapter XIII
OVERVIEW

In this section of the manual you will learn about the document design capabilities of Perfect Writer. As you will see Perfect Writer radically changes the conventional approach to typing and preparing manuscripts. With Perfect Writer you no longer have to worry about setting tabs and margins and line spacing. There is no need to devise special formats for lists, quotations, or other special texts. Instead, Perfect Writer allows you to choose from a wide variety of custom format options that automatically print your document the way you want.

Included in the document design and printing procedures of Perfect Writer are such features as automatic paging, creation of a table of contents, an alphabetized index, page headings, footnotes, page footings, and much more. All of these features are fully integrated with Perfect Writer's editing functions. If you decide to add three new paragraphs to your document and to delete a footnote, then simply use the Perfect Writer editing commands to make these changes. While reformatting your text, Perfect Writer automatically renumbers the pages and footnotes to accommodate what changes you make. Your new document will be printed exactly as you have designed it.
No Need to Modify Commands

Once format commands have been placed in your document, Perfect Writer is able to adapt those commands to the capabilities of any printer.

For example, if your command specifies that a word be italicized, but the printer you are using can only underline, Perfect Writer directs the printer to do the best it can, i.e. underline. However, should you later acquire a printer with italicizing capabilities, Perfect Writer will recognize this and direct your new printer to italicize the word properly—all on the authority of your original command!

Greater Editing Freedom

Once you have specified a format for a portion of text, you need care no longer how that segment of text appears on your screen. Perfect Writer will rearrange the text to match the format you have specified.

As you will see, the effect of this is to free you of the burden of having constantly to oversee the myriad details of formatting your document (i.e., adjusting margins, tabbing, spacing, indenting, etc.).
Format Commands

Document design format commands are embedded in the text of your document at the time of writing and editing, and before the document is stored in a file. Every format command indicates two things:

1. The format option to be used.
2. The portion of text to be formatted.

The ′@′ (At-sign) & ′Fences′

All format commands begin with the @ (at-sign), while the text to be formatted is normally enclosed within ′fences.′ Fences can be any of the following:

\{ \ldots \}, [ \ldots ], \{ \ldots \}, < \ldots >, " \ldots ",

and ′\ldots′

Thus to format a paragraph as a quotation simply place the ′@QUOTATION′ format name at the beginning of the paragraph and place any of the above fences around the paragraph to be formatted as a quotation. In a sense, you are fencing in the material you want formatted.
General Form of the Format Command

In general, a format command follows the form:

\[ \text{@FORMATNAME( Text To Be Formatted )} \]

- The name of the format option (sometimes abbreviated)
- The text is 'fenced'
- The @ 'at sign' signals a format command to Perfect Writer
- Important: NO SPACE between FORMATNAME and FENCE

Example:

You wish to underline a sentence in a paragraph. The UNDERLINE command is placed in the following manner:
"@" signals a command to Perfect Writer
Underline UX FORMATNAME (abbreviated)
Format fences

This is an example, nothing more. @UX(The sentence to be underlined follows immediately after the format option name and is 'fenced.') This is an example, nothing more.

This is an example, nothing more. The sentence to be underlined follows immediately after the format command name and is 'fenced.' This is an example, nothing more.
BEGIN/END Command Form

If the text to be formatted is long and contains within it other nested format commands, it is often useful to use the BEGIN/END command:

@BEGIN(FORMATNAME)

This is the sample text which will be formatted according to the format name option.

@END(FORMATNAME)

Note that in this command form the name of the format option is enclosed in fences, while the text to be formatted is not. This can only be used with the environment commands in Chapter XIV.
Example:

You wish to format as a quotation several lines (or even paragraphs) of text, in which are nested other format commands. Place the format commands as follows:

```
@BEGIN(QUOTATION)

"This is an example of formatting text. This @U(word) is underlined and this @B(word) is bold. This ends our example."

@END(QUOTATION)
```

"This is an example of formatting text. This word is underlined and this word is bold. This ends our example."

'Nesting' Format Commands

Formatting commands can be placed one within another in a process called 'nesting,' as in the following example, in which a word within a quotation is underlined:

```
This is an example, nothing more.
@QUOTATION("This is a quotation and this one @l(word) will be italicized.") This is an example, nothing more.
```

Note that in the nesting example different fences for the two commands were used, i.e. brackets, [], for the quotation, and parentheses, () for the underlined word. This was to avoid confusion. When nesting formatting commands it is extremely important not to confuse or omit any fences. Missing fences or similar pairs of fences enclosed one within another will result in an error message from Perfect Writer.
Sequence of Format Commands

Generally, format commands are inserted in the text in the place where formatting is to occur.

However, format commands that deal with the document as a whole, or with portions of text that repeat throughout the document, such as PAGEHEADING commands or style parameter commands that determine margins, tabs, etc., are placed at the very beginning of the document before all other text.

Style

Many of the document design formats available can be altered using style parameter commands, which govern indentation, margins, spacing, and so on. Where a format option can be altered using a style parameter, it will be so noted in that format options list of 'characteristics.' Style parameter commands and their use are discussed in Chapter XVIII.

Formatting Errors

From time to time you will improperly place a formatting command—omit a fence, fail to supply a numbered dimension to a style parameter, etc. This will cause Perfect Writer to generate an error message identifying the cause of the problem. In most cases, Perfect Writer will specify the line on which the error occurred.

The error messages that Perfect Writer may issue are listed in Appendix B, together with a simple explanation of what they mean.
Chapter XIV

ENVIRONMENT FORMAT COMMANDS

This chapter presents the 'Environment Format' commands, those format options that apply to bodies of text, i.e. lists, quotations, examples, etc. Each format option is provided with a list of features, followed by the command form and an illustration of the output that can be expected.
@TEXT

The TEXT Environment

' Cleans-up ' a text by grouping and indenting all paragraphs, justifying margins, wrapping and filling all lines. TEXT is the normal (or default) print mode of Perfect Writer.

Features:

- Long lines are 'wrapped' and short lines are 'filled.'
- Lines will be 'justified' according to the value of the 'justification' style parameter [default = yes].
- Line spacing, paragraph indentions, and spacing between paragraphs are determined by 'spacing,' 'indent,' and 'spread' style parameters respectively.
The Command Form:

@BEGIN(Text)

This is a sample document which originally had ragged margins, unfilled lines, and no justification. Some paragraphs were indented, some were not.

This format can be used to override the VERBATIM print mode by simply enclosing the entire document within a TEXT format—i.e. place @BEGIN(TEXT) at the beginning of the document, and @END(TEXT) at the end of the document.

@END(TEXT)

The Result:

This is a sample document which originally had ragged margins, unfilled lines, and no justification. Some paragraphs were indented, some were not.

This format can be used to override the VERBATIM print mode by simply enclosing the entire document within a TEXT format—i.e. place @BEGIN(TEXT) at the beginning of the document, and @END(TEXT) at the end of the document.

Note that in order to print an ' @ ' sign you need to type it twice, otherwise Perfect Writer will execute any command following the ' @ ' sign.
The VERBATIM Environment

VERBATIM causes all text to be reproduced exactly as it appears on the screen. If you desire to print your document as it appears on the screen then use the format option to override the normal TEXT print mode.

Features:
- Lines remain as they are.
- Tabs and blankspaces are preserved.

The Command Form:
@BEGIN(VERBATIM)

This is a free form text to illustrate the use of the VERBATIM format. Everything is printed exactly as you create it on the screen.

Nothing is justified to make it fit or look better.

@END(VERBATIM)

The Result:

This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph.
@EXAMPLE
The EXAMPLE Environment

Provides a simple format for offsetting examples and other illustrative matter from the rest of the text.

Features:

• Long lines are 'wrapped' but short lines are left unchanged (i.e. they are not 'filled').
• Text is single-spaced and indented one-half inch on the left and one-quarter inch on the right.
• Blankspaces and tabs in the text are left unchanged.

The Command Form:

@EXAMPLE(This illustrates the EXAMPLE format. Notice that short lines are left unchanged, while long lines that do not fit are 'wrapped' to the next line. The text is inset by one-half inch on the left and one-quarter inch on the right.)

The Result:

This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This illustrates the EXAMPLE format option. Notice that short lines are left unchanged, while long lines that do not fit are 'wrapped' to the next line. The text is inset by one-half inch on the left and one-quarter inch on the right.

This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph.
@QUOTATION
The QUOTATION Environment

Provides a format for quotations and other parenthetical remarks.

Features:

- Long lines are 'wrapped' and short lines 'filled'; paragraphs are indented.
- Lines are single-spaced and inset one-half inch from either margin.
- The right edge of the text is either justified or left ragged, depending upon the value of the 'justification' style parameter.
- Paragraph indentions and spacing between paragraphs are determined by the value of the 'indent' and 'spread' style parameters respectively.

The Command Form:

@QUOTATION("This is a quotation. It is single spaced and indented on both sides one-half inch. All lines have been 'wrapped' and 'filled.'
Notice that you have to add the quotation marks yourself."
—Howard H. Wade, 1982.)

The Result:

This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph.
This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph.

"This is a quotation. It is single-spaced and indented on both sides one-half inch. All lines have been 'wrapped' and 'filled.'
Notice that you have to add the quotation marks yourself." —Howard H. Wade, 1982.

This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph.
This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph.
@CENTER
The CENTER Environment

Causes all lines within a text to be centered between the left and right margins.

Features:

- Lines are neither 'wrapped' nor 'filled.'
- A line too long to fit between the margins will begin at the left margin and extend beyond the right margin.
- Tabs and blankspaces in the text remain unchanged.

The Format Command:

@CENTER(This is an example of the CENTER format. Each line is centered.)

The Result:

This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is an example of the CENTER format. Each line is centered.

This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph.
@ADDRESS
@CLOSING
The ADDRESS & CLOSING Environments

Causes the return address and the closing salutation to be properly positioned in letters. Essentially these commands are identical. They are also useful in creating a 'column' of text on the right side of a page.

Features:

• Lines are neither ‘wrapped’ nor ‘filled’; thus, line lengths remain unchanged.
• The text is left justified, with the left edge beginning in the center of the page.
• Tabs and blank space in the text remain unchanged.
The Command Form:

@ADDRESS(Perfect Software
1400 Shattuck Avenue
Berkeley, CA 94709)

Dear _______

This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph.

@CLOSING(Yours very truly,

Jennifer Kaufman)

The Result:

Perfect Software
1400 Shattuck Avenue
Berkeley, CA 94709

Dear _______

This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph.

Yours very truly,

Jennifer Kaufman
@FLUSHLEFT
@FLUSHRIGHT
The FLUSH Environments

FLUSHLEFT causes the lines of a text to begin at the left margin.

FLUSHRIGHT causes all lines of text to end against the right margin.

Features:

• Lines are neither 'wrapped' nor 'filled'; thus, line lengths remain the same.
• All tabs and blankspaces in the text are preserved.
The @FLUSHLEFT Command Form:

@FLUSHLEFT(This is an example of FLUSHLEFT. Each line begins at the left margin, except that tabs and blank spaces and line-breaks are preserved as they were in the original.)

The @FLUSHRIGHT Command Form:

@FLUSHRIGHT(This is an example of FLUSHRIGHT. Each line ends against the right margin. Notice that line lengths and blank spaces are the same as in the original.)

The Result:

This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is an example of FLUSHLEFT. Each line begins at the left margin, except that tabs and blank spaces and line-breaks are preserved as they were in the original. This is an example of FLUSHRIGHT. Each line ends against the right margin. Notice that line lengths and blank spaces are the same as in the original. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph.
LIST ENVIRONMENT COMMANDS

@LEVEL
The LEVEL Environment

Causes a series of items or paragraphs to be numbered. LEVEL formats can be ‘nested’ one within another.

Features:

• Long lines are ‘wrapped’ and short lines are ‘filled.’
• The right edge is either justified or left ragged depending upon the value of the ‘justification’ style parameter.
• Spacing between paragraphs is determined by the value of the ‘spread’ style parameter.
• Paragraphs can be ‘undented’ or not, depending upon the ‘levelhang’ style parameter (default is No or not undented). If undented, the number will ‘stick-out’ from the block of the paragraph. If not undented, the number will be within the block of the paragraph.
• ‘Nested’ paragraphs can be indented or not, depending upon the value of the ‘levelindent’ style parameter (see Chapter XVIII, page 222). If not indented, paragraphs will differ only in their numbering. If indented, nested paragraphs will be inset by one-half inch (this is the default).
The Command Form:

(These examples show two 'nested' LEVEL formats, in which the paragraphs are first undented, and then not undented.

@BEGIN(LEVEL)
This is the FIRST numbered paragraph.

This is the SECOND numbered paragraph.

This is the THIRD numbered paragraph.
@LEVEL(Here begins the FIRST nested paragraph.)
Here begins the SECOND nested paragraph.)

This is the FOURTH numbered paragraph.

This is the FIFTH numbered paragraph.
@END(LEVEL)

Note: The blank lines between sentences separate items.
@STYLE(levelhang no) default
(NOT UNDENTED)

This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph.
This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph.

1. This is the FIRST numbered paragraph
   ... ...

2. This is the SECOND numbered paragraph
   ... ...

3. This is the THIRD numbered paragraph
   3.1. Here begins the FIRST nested paragraph
         ... ...
    3.2. Here begins the SECOND nested paragraph
         ... ...

4. This is the FOURTH numbered paragraph
   ... ...

5. This is the FIFTH numbered paragraph
   ... ...

This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph.
This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph.

Note that the numbers are included in the bodies of the paragraph.
@STYLE{levelhang yes}
(UNDENTED)

This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph.

1. This is the FIRST numbered paragraph

2. This is the SECOND numbered paragraph

3. This is the THIRD numbered paragraph

3.1. Here begins the FIRST nested paragraph

3.2. Here begins the SECOND nested paragraph

4. This is the FOURTH numbered paragraph

5. This is the FIFTH numbered paragraph

This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph. This is a sample paragraph.

Note that the numbers are not included in the bodies of the paragraph.
@ENUMERATE
The ENUMERATE Environment

Causes items or paragraphs to be numbered and inset from the document mar­
gins. ENUMERATE formats can be 'nested.'

Features:

- Long lines are 'wrapped' and short lines are 'filled.'
- Numbers are indented two characters and the paragraph itself six characters.
- The right edge of the text is either justified or left ragged depending upon the
  setting of the 'justification' style parameter (default = yes).
- Spacing between paragraphs is determined by the value of the 'spread' style
  parameter (default = 1 line).
The Command Form:

[This example shows two 'nested' ENUMERATE commands. Although single items have been used, whole paragraphs could have been used as well.]

@BEGIN(ENUMERATE)
Sculpture

Paintings
@ENUMERATE(Oil

Water

Acrylic)
Photography

Clothing
@END(ENUMERATE)

The Result:

This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more.

1. sculpture
2. paintings
   1. oil
   2. water
   3. acrylic
3. photography
4. clothing

Note that blank lines are used to separate the items.
@ITEMIZE
The ITEMIZE Environment

Causes items in a list to be offset from the document margins and marked with dashes or asterisks.

Features:

- All lines are 'wrapped' and 'filled.' Thus, original line lengths are not preserved.
- The right edge of the text is either justified or left ragged depending upon the value of the 'justification' style parameter.
- Spacing between paragraphs is determined by the value of the 'spread' style parameter.
- Dashes are indented from the margins by two spaces, and the paragraph or item is indented by five.
The Command Form:

This example shows two 'nested' itemize commands. Though single items have been used to illustrate this command, paragraphs could have been used as well.

@BEGIN(ITEMIZE)
Sculpture

Paintings
@ITEMIZE(Oil

Water

Acrylic

Photography

Clothing
@END(ITEMIZE)

The Result:

This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more.

- sculpture
- paintings
  * oil
  * water
  * acrylic
- photography
- clothing

This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more.

Note that blank lines are used to separate the items.
@DESCRIPTION
The DESCRIPTION Environment

Causes an item to be separated and displayed away from the paragraph which describes it.

Features:

- Lines are single-spaced, 'wrapped' and 'filled.' Thus, original line lengths are not preserved.
- The right edge of the text is either justified or left ragged depending upon the 'justification' style parameter.
- Spacing between paragraphs is determined by the 'spread' style parameter.
- Paragraphs are indented approximately one-fourth of the distance between the left and right margins.
The Command Form:

@BEGIN(DESCRIPTION)
apple\a a red fruit that is very useful in making apple pies. Apples have a slight crunchy texture.

orange\a a round orange-colored fruit used in making orange juice.

watermelon\a a large oblong melon with lots of seeds—a summertime favorite.
@END(DESCRIPTION)

Note: The "@ \" (at-sign, slash) occurring just after each item serves as a 'tab' which causes the remaining description to be set back and grouped into a paragraph. This 'tab' can be used without a descriptive item. (On some terminals there is no back slash. If your terminal doesn't have a back slash, try a normal slash '/'.) Also, blank lines are used to separate descriptions.

The Result:
@VERSE
The VERSE Environment

Provides a means of formatting verse as well as other unnumbered and un­
marked lists of items.

Features:

• Long lines are 'wrapped' but short lines are left unchanged (i.e. they are not
  'filled').
• The text as a whole is indented, while paragraphs within the text are 'undent­
ed.'
• Tabs and blankspaces within the text are not preserved, but replaced with sin­
gle spaces.
• The right margin is inset 10 characters.
The Command Form:

@BEGIN(VERSE)
Roses are red,
Violets are blue,
This line is too long to fit on a single line and will 'wrap,'
Which is a very handy thing for it to do!
@END(VERSE)

(Example 1)

The Command Form:

@BEGIN(VERSE)
These two paragraphs illustrate the other use of the VERSE format, that of listing unnumbered and unmarked items, such as paragraphs.

Notice that both of these paragraphs are indented from the document margins just as a 'verse' would be. However, their first lines are 'undented' for easy identification.

@END(VERSE)

(Example 2)

The Result:

Roses are red
violets are blue,
This line is too long to fit on a single line
and will 'wrap,'
Which is a very handy thing for it to do!

These two paragraphs illustrate the other use of the VERSE format, that of listing unnumbered and unmarked items, such as paragraphs.

Notice that both of these paragraphs are indented from the document margins just as a 'verse' would be. However, their first lines are 'undented' for easy identification.
@UNDENT
The UNDENT Environment

Creates paragraphs whose first lines are 'undented.'

Features:

- Long lines are 'wrapped' and short lines 'filled.'
- The right edge of the text is either justified or not depending upon the value of the 'justification' style parameter (default is justified).
- Spacing between paragraphs is determined by the value of the 'spread' style parameter (default is one line).
- How far the body of the paragraph is indented from the first line (or how far the first line is undented from the paragraph) is determined by the value of the 'indent' style parameter (default is two characters).

The Command Form:

@UNDENT(This illustrates the UNDENT format, in which the first line of each paragraph is 'undented' from the body of the paragraph.

How far the first line is undented is determined by the value of the 'indent' style parameter—an easy thing to change.)

The Result:

This illustrates the UNDENT format, in which the first line of each paragraph is 'undented' from the body of the paragraph.

How far the first line is undented is determined by the value of the 'indent' style parameter—an easy thing to change.
@INDENT
The INDENT Environment

Causes Perfect Writer to indent all text by one-half inch. Like the DISPLAY command, the INDENT command sets off text for highlighting. Only the right margin is set.

The Command Form:

@INDENT(This is an example of the INDENT command. Notice that the right hand margin is not affected by Perfect Writer.)

The Result:

This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more.

This is an example of the indent command. Notice that the right hand margin is not altered by Perfect Writer.

This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more.
@DISPLAY
The DISPLAY Environment

The left margin of all text is inset by one-half inch and the right margin is inset by one-quarter inch. This environment is useful for displaying examples or programs that should be offset slightly from the rest of the text. Also see the EXAMPLE, QUOTATION and INDENT environments.

The Command Form:

This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more.
@DISPLAY(This is the text being displayed. Notice how it is set off for display. Both the left and right margins are indented.)
This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more.

The Result:
Chapter XV

**TYPEFACE COMMANDS**

If your printer allows for backspacing, underlining, and different type fonts, then you can use these with the Perfect Writer typeface format commands. As with other format commands, you simply place a fence around the text you want printed in a special font and precede the fence with a selected typeface format command.

@B

**The BOLDFACE Command**

Causes text to appear in 'boldface' (darker than surrounding text).

**The Command Form:**

@B(These words are in Boldface.)

**The Result:**

```
This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more.

These words are in Boldface.

This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more.
```

Note: The BEGIN and END fence commands cannot be used with any of the format commands in this or any of the following chapters.
UNDERLINING Command

Perfect Writer offers three underlining options:

@U  1) Command Form:

@U(All of the printing characters in this sentence are underlined, including punctuation. However, blank spaces are not underlined.)

The Result:

@UN  2) Command Form:

@UN(Just the alphanumeric characters are underlined in this sentence, not punctuation... or spaces!)

The Result:

@UX  3) Command Form:

@UX(Everything is underlined in this sentence—characters, spaces, and punctuation!)

The Result:
@I
The ITALICS Command

Causes text to be printed in italics. If the printing device is not capable of italicizing, underlining is used instead.

The Command Form:

@I(This text is in italics, which produces a nice contrast to surrounding text.)

The Result:

This text is in italics, which produces a nice contrast to surrounding text.

@P
The BOLDFACE ITALICS Command

Causes text to be italicized and boldfaced. If the machine printer is not capable of italicizing, underlining is used instead.

The Command Form:

@P(This line is in BOLDFACE ITALICS—What does it look like?)

The Result:

This line is in BOLDFACE ITALICS—What does it look like?
@ +  {SUPERscript}
@ −  {SUBscript}

The SUPERscript and SUBscript Environments

Causes characters to be printed above or below the line of regular text. (These format options are not used for footnotes. See Chapter XVI, page 10.)

Extra lines above and below the line containing super- and subscripts can be added to prevent confusion of super- and subscripts on successive lines. This is accomplished by the 'scriptpush' style parameter (default = yes). (See Chapter XVIII, page 5.)

All format commands embedded within super- or subscript commands are ignored except @B (boldface), @R (roman-type), or @T (typewriter text).

The Command Form:

The first half of this sentence has a @ − (word) subscripted, while the second half has a @ + (word) superscripted.

The Result:

The first half of this sentence has a word subscripted, while word the second half has a word superscripted.
@W
The ONE-WORD Command

Causes material to be considered as one word. When printing Perfect Writer will not split the word[s] between lines or insert extra space within it while justifying.

The Command Form:

Alia ka Zam! Abra Ca Dabra Doo! What does @W(Alia ka Zam! Abra Ca Dabra Doo?)

The Result:

Alia ka Zam! Abra Ca Dabra Doo! What does Alia ka Zam! Abra Ca Dabra Doo?

@R
@T
The ROMAN & TYPEWRITER Commands

Causes printing to resume in ordinary typewriter or roman characters. Useful for emphasizing a character or word within a 'boldface,' 'italics,' or 'boldface italics' format.

The Command Form:

@P[All but two of these words are in boldface italics. Can you @R(spot) the @T(two) that are not?]  

The Result:

All but two of these words are in boldface italics. Can you spot the two that are not?
Documents Sectioning and Organizing
Chapter XVI
DOCUMENT SECTIONING AND ORGANIZATION

This chapter begins an introduction to the sectioning and organizing design options offered by Perfect Writer. The commands presented here are used to section and title the parts of a document. Examples of both the command form and the resulting printer output have been provided whenever possible.

SECTIONING COMMANDS

Headings

Perfect Writer offers various styles of headings to title and section a document. Headings can be numbered or unnumbered, centered, underlined, boldfaced, or plain. Some headings cause Perfect Writer to begin a new page of text, while other headings are only preceded by several blank lines. Numbered headings automatically generate an entry to be included in a table of contents for the document. Following are the various heading formats available in Perfect Writer.

Unnumbered Headings

Two basic unnumbered headings exist in Perfect Writer: MAJORHEADING and SUBHEADING.
@MAJORHEADING
The MAJORHEADING Format
Features:
• Causes a boldfaced, unnumbered, centered heading to be printed at the begin­ning of the text.
• Long lines of the heading are 'wrapped' but short lines are not 'filled.'
• Tabs and blankspaces in the heading are not preserved, i.e. they are replaced with a single blankspace.

Three choices for a MAJORHEADING are available:

UNNUMBERED  Perfect Writer skips to a new page, leaving six blank lines before the heading and two after.
Command Form:
@UNNUMBERED(This is a MAJORHEADING)

MAJORHEADING  Perfect Writer does not skip to a new page, but leaves six blank lines before the heading and two after.
Command Form:
@MAJORHEADING(This is a MAJORHEADING)

HEADING  Perfect Writer leaves four blank lines before the heading and two after.
Command Form:
@HEADING(This is a MAJORHEADING)

The Result:

This is a MAJORHEADING
This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more.
@SUBHEADING
The SUBHEADING Format

Causes an underlined heading to be printed at the left margin.

Features:

• Long lines are 'wrapped,' but short lines are not 'filled.'
• Multiple blankspaces and tabs in the text are replaced with a single space.
• The subheading is preceded by four blank lines and followed by two.

Command Form:

@SUBHEADING(This is a SUBHEADING)

The Result:

This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more.

This is a SUBHEADING

This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more. This is a sample paragraph, nothing more.
NUMBERED SECTION HEADINGS/TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction

It is possible to generate a table of contents for any document by using numbered headings to divide and section the document. Each numbered heading generates an entry in the table of contents, containing the section number, section title, and page on which the section or subsection starts.

Possible numbered headings are:

@CHAPTER
Begins a new page, leaves six blank lines, and prints a boldfaced, centered, numbered chapter heading at the beginning of the text, followed by three more blank lines. Also, initiates the numbering sequence for any subordinate sections that follow.

@SECTION
Prints an underlined, numbered heading flush with the left margin. This heading is preceded by four blank lines and followed by two.

@SUBSECTION
Prints a numbered heading, which is not underlined, flush with the left margin. This heading is preceded by two blank lines and followed by one.

@PARAGRAPH
Prints a numbered heading, which is not underlined, flush with the left margin. This heading is preceded by two blank lines and followed by one.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>@APPENDIX</code></td>
<td>Like the CHAPTER command, 'APPENDIX' begins a new page, leaves six blank lines, and prints a boldfaced, centered, and numbered appendix heading at the head of the text, followed by three more blank lines. It initiates the numbering sequence for following subordinate APPENDIXSECTIONS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>@APPENDIXSECTION</code></td>
<td>Leaves four blank lines and prints an underlined appendix section heading flush with the left margin, followed by two blank lines.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example:

The following sequence of numbered headings might represent a portion of a User Manual for Perfect Writer.

Command Form:

@CHAPTER (Basic Commands)
@SECTION (Moving the Cursor)
@SUBSECTION (The FORWARD CHARACTER command)
@SUBSECTION (The BACKWARD CHARACTER command)
@SECTION (Deleting)
@SUBSECTION (The DELETE ENTIRE LINE command)
@SUBSECTION (The WIPE REGION command)
@PARAGRAPH (The SET MARK command)
@APPENDIX (Installing Perfect Writer)
@APPENDIXSECTION (Console)
@APPENDIXSECTION (Printer)
Results:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 1 Basic Commands</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Moving the Cursor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.1 The FORWARD CHARACTER Command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2 The BACKWARD CHARACTER Command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Deleting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1 The DELETE ENTIRE LINE Command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.2 The WIPE REGION Procedure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.2.1 The SET MARK Command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installing Perfect Writer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A.1 Console</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A.2 Printer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The table of contents for this outline would appear as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table of Contents†</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 1 Basic Commands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Moving the Cursor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.1 The FORWARD CHARACTER Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2 The BACKWARD CHARACTER Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Deleting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1 The DELETE ENTIRE LINE Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.2 The WIPE REGION procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.2.1 The SET MARK Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installing Perfect Writer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A.1 Console</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A.2 Printer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

†Note: When printed Perfect Writer would include page numbers.
General Note:

Main chapter and appendix headings will be numbered and formatted depending upon the value of the 'chapter' style parameter. If the 'chapter' style parameter is set to "yes," then chapters and appendix headings will be formatted and numbered (default is yes). If the parameter is "no" numbering will begin at the next lowest division which is 'Section.'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section Numbering with</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@STYLE(chapters)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SECTION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBSECTION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARAGRAPH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPENDIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPENDIXSECTION</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the parameter is set to "no" in a document containing CHAPTER and APPENDIX heading commands, an error will result. The document will be printed, but the old chapter headings will be formatted awkwardly, since Perfect Writer doesn't know what to do with them.
ORGANIZATION

@INDEX
The INDEX Command

This command instructs Perfect Writer to generate an index for items that you tag throughout your text. The list of items will automatically be printed alphabetically at the end of the document together with the page numbers on which the item occurs.

Command Form:

@INDEX(multiple screens) Perfect Writer allows the use of multiple screens to ease the editing process.

The Result:

Index

L

M
Multiple screens 23

N
The FOOTNOTE Command

Causes Perfect Writer to format the designated material as a footnote, inserting in the text a number to reference the footnote.

The value of 'footpush' style parameter (see Chapter XVIII, page 221) determines whether the reference number is printed as a 'superscript,' (default) or is enclosed in brackets, [ ].

Depending on the setting of the 'notes' style parameter (see Chapter XVIII, page 223), the footnote will be placed at the bottom of the page, the end of the text, or within the line itself enclosed in brackets (default is bottom of the page).

Command Form:

.... As Jones has observed, software firms have an enormous potential, as yet largely unrealized. @FOOT[Jones, William, "The Future of Software Firms," @U(Journal of Business Methods), 1979, @U(48) pp. 321-33.]. . .

The Result:

---

@NOTE
The NOTE Command

Causes text to be printed as a numbered note at the end of the document. A reference number to the note is inserted in the text at the location of the command.

The 'footpush' style parameter (see Chapter XVIII, page 221) determines whether this number is printed as a superscript (default) or is enclosed in brackets, [ ].

Command Form:

........ @NOTE(This note will be numbered and printed in full at the end of the document along with all other 'notes.')
........
........

The Result:

Notes

1. This note will be numbered and printed in full at the end of the document along with all other 'notes'.
PAGEHEADINGS/PAGEFOOTINGS

@PAGEHEADING
@PAGEFOOTING

In long documents it is often desirable to print ‘pageheadings’ and ‘pagefootings’ at the top and bottom of pages, in order to identify not only the work as a whole, but also the chapters and sections that are included.

Perfect Writer provides a simple and convenient means of doing this through its PAGEHEADING and PAGEFOOTING format commands. Each command has three parts:

- a left justified part
- a center part
- a right justified part

The words "left = " , "center = " , and "right = " are used to specify the text to be placed in each part. If any of these words are omitted, the particular space in the heading or footing that it designates will be left blank. In addition, a "line = " designation may be added to include a line of text beneath a page heading. ‘Center,’ ‘right,’ and ‘line’ designations may not include tab or newline characters.

When specifying headings and footings for an entire document, the commands are placed at the beginning of the document.

Page Numbering

If no PAGEFOOTING command is given, as in the above example, Perfect Writer will automatically number all pages sequentially, beginning with '-1-'. If you wish to turn off the automatic page numbering, then simply place an empty PAGEFOOTING at the beginning of a document. This would appear as:

@PAGEFOOTING( )
Command Form:

@PAGEHEADING(left = "Perfect Writer", right = "User Manual", line = "Where the future is NOW!")

Result:

This would result in the following page heading appearing on every page in the document.

![Page heading diagram]
Variable Pageheadings and Pagefootings

It is possible to have pageheadings and pagefootings vary throughout the document, depending upon the material being presented in any particular chapter or section.

VARIABLE PAGEHEADING

The following PAGEHEADING command, placed at the beginning of the document, would cause the current chapter title to be printed in the center of every page of that chapter:

**Command Form:**

```
@PAGEHEADING(left = "Perfect Writer", center = @VALUE(CHAPTERTITLE)", right = "User Manual")
```

**Result:**

![Perfect Writer Basic Commands User Manual]

Here the predefined variable name CHAPTERTITLE (see Chapter XVII, page 214) is used in conjunction with the @VALUE command (see Chapter XVII, pages 211-214) to insert the current chapter title in the center space of the heading. As the chapters change, so will the chapter title being printed in the heading.
VARIABLE PAGEFOOTING

The following PAGEFOOTING command, placed at the beginning of a document, would cause each chapter of the document to be numbered separately.

Command Form:

@PAGEFOOTING[center = "@REF(CHAPTER)-@VALUE(page)"]

Result:

Here, the value of two predefined 'counters' are used—'chapter' and 'page.' (For a discussion of counters, see Chapter XVII, page 216.) As the chapters and pages change, the values of these two counters will change also.
Odd-Even Pageheadings

Pageheadings can be different for odd- or even-numbered pages of a document. The words "odd" and "even" are appended to the PAGEHEADING and PAGEFOOTING commands to specify which page the heading will be for. This option is often used when pages are duplicated on both sides of a sheet and gathered into a book.

Command Form:

@PAGEHEADING(left = "Perfect Writer", right = "User Manual" {odd})

@PAGEHEADING(left = "User Manual", right = "Perfect Writer" {even})

Result:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User Manual</th>
<th>Perfect Writer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perfect Writer</td>
<td>User Manual</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-2- -3-
Chapter XVII
TOOLS FOR FORM LETTER DESIGN

Perfect Writer provides several commands and features which are useful in the construction of form letters. In this chapter we will introduce these along with Perfect Writer's use of variables in formatting.

@CASE
The @CASE Command

The CASE command procedure allows one of several alternate portions of text in a document to be selected for printing. Thus, a document can have several variations of text 'built-in,' and each one can be selected as desired.

The CASE formatting option is useful in the preparation of form letters or multi-purpose documents where individual variations are necessary to distinguish separate versions of what is essentially the same document.

Example:

Suppose that a letter has been prepared to introduce Perfect Writer to a variety of customers: secretaries, businessmen, college professors, students, and the 'general user' (this last can include all of the previous categories).

Overall the letter does not distinguish between the categories of user, but simply presents the advantages Perfect Writer brings to the task of writing and editing.

It is desirable, however, that the final paragraph address itself directly to only one potential user, thus personalizing what would otherwise be an impersonal form letter.
Steps:

1. Create at the end of the document the several versions of the final paragraph, tagging each with a name 'tag,' and enclosing all of them within the 'fences' of a CASE command. Thus:

\[
\text{@CASE(User, }
\]

Secretary, "Perfect Writer will do more than just eliminate clerical drudgeries. It will enhance your abilities in all areas, making you not only more capable and valuable professionally, but as well allow you more creative control in editing and designing documents."

Businessman, "As you can see, it is no exaggeration when we say that Perfect Writer will increase the efficiency of your office and business routines in ways that you never dreamed possible."

Professor, "As familiar as you are with drafting and preparing written documents, we feel that you will be particularly appreciative of these many time-saving innovations that Perfect Writer brings to the task and of writing and editing. Perfect Writer is particularly well-suited to the task of preparing book length manuscripts and professional articles."

Student, "What Perfect Writer means to you is faster and more efficient preparation of the notes, papers, and examinations that your studies require. At last, outstanding academic achievement is no longer tied to one's endurance at the typewriter."

NULL, "[ ]".

Else, "From all of this it is easy to see that Perfect Writer fulfills most, if not all, of the needs of individuals who depend upon fast, efficient written communications to accomplish their private and professional goals."

\[
\]
2. Select the desired text by assigning at the beginning of your document a 'value' to the variable name "User," using a @STRING command (see Chapter XVII, pages 211-214). For example:
   1. @STRING(User = 'Professor')

      The 'professor' text will be selected and printed for the final paragraph.

   2. @STRING(User = 'Student')

      The 'student' text will be selected and printed for the final paragraph.

   3. @STRING(User = NULL) No final paragraph will be printed.

   4. @STRING(User = ) [i.e. That is, you neglect to assign a value to the variable name 'User.']

      The 'Else' option will be selected and printed.

In this example notice the following:

- A single pair of fences enclose all of the alternative texts following the CASE command.
- Each alternative text is enclosed in quotation marks, " " , and is ended with a period. It is also separated from its name 'tag' by a comma.
- A 'NULL' option has been included to allow for the case when you may not want to include a final paragraph at all. (The NULL case is specified in the CASE command by two facing brackets, [ ], containing nothing, not even spaces.)
- The 'Else' option contains the text for a general user, that is, when no other particular user is specified.
- The word 'User' which follows immediately after the @CASE command is the variable name, that, when given a value, will select the desired text.
@INCLUDE
The @INCLUDE Command

The @INCLUDE command instructs Perfect Writer to insert a document from another file into the text of the document file being printed. The insertion is made at the point in the text where the command is given. Following the insertion of the file defined in the @INCLUDE command, Perfect Writer continues printing the current document.

The @INCLUDE command can also be used to assemble a manuscript length document stored in several different files (perhaps a different file for each chapter). With a master file made of general format commands, style parameter settings, and @INCLUDE commands for each different file, it would be possible to control the assembling of the full document. Documents should generally be 20 pages or less. Documents longer than 20 pages should be divided into parts and assembled during printing with the @INCLUDE command.

Command Form:

The INCLUDE command can be given singly or in combination. For example,

@INCLUDE(filename.MSS)

The INCLUDE command can also be used in conjunction with the MESSAGE command to accept additional text typed at the console during printing. (See discussion below.) For example,

@INCLUDE(con:)

would instruct Perfect Writer to include text taken interactively from the CONsole while the text was being formatted, rather than to take the text from a file stored on disk.
@MESSAGE
The MESSAGE Command

Causes Perfect Writer to display on the console screen, during printing, messages that query for additional information. Such messages are used in conjunction with the INCLUDE command. This command procedure is most often used in personalizing form letters and other standardized documents.

Command Form:

```
@MESSAGE(What is the address?)
@INCLUDE(CON:)
```

When, during printing, this command is encountered, Perfect Writer will display the message, "What is the address?" on the console screen. At that time you should enter the required information. The @INCLUDE(CON:) instructs Perfect Writer to insert into the text being printed whatever information you type at the console ("CON").

General Note: Since Perfect Writer's regular editing commands are inoperative during printing, the following special commands should be used when inputting text at the console in response to an @INCLUDE(CON:) message:

1. 

Instructs Perfect Writer that the required information has been entered and printing can resume.
2. **ENTER**

'carriage return'
Tells Perfect Writer to begin a new line for the information you are inputting.

3. **CTRL** + **X**

Deletes the characters of the last line entered but not the line itself.

4. **CTRL** + **L**

Reprints all text entered.
The COMMENT Command

Causes Perfect Writer to ignore a specified portion of text. This command is useful for providing internal notes to the author of the document. It can also be used to temporarily omit portions of a document from printing, without the necessity of having to delete them.

Command Form:

```
@COMMENT(Don’t forget to add details about... whatever it is!!!)
```

Note: If the omitted text contains other embedded format commands, use the BEGIN/END command form, since other format 'fences' may disrupt the execution of this command.
@BLANKPAGE
The BLANKPAGE Command

Causes Perfect Writer to insert additional page(s) after the current page is finished. Additional blankpages added with this command will have pageheadings and pagefootings and be numbered. To get completely blank pages, do not use this command, but simply insert blank sheets manually after the document is printed.

Command Form:

@BLANKPAGE(4)

Result:

This will insert four numbered but blank pages.
@BLANKSPACE
The BLANKSPACE Command

Causes Perfect Writer to insert a specified number of blank lines into the text where the command is given.

Command Form:

@BLANKSPACE(3 lines)

Result:

Three blank lines would be inserted into the text at the place where the command is given.
@NEWPAGE
The NEWPAGE Command

Causes Perfect Writer to print the next line after this command at the top of a new page. This command is useful in selecting when to switch to a new page.

Command Form:

This is where the first page ends.
@NEWPAGE
This is where a newpage starts.

Result:

This is where the first page ends.

This is where a newpage starts.
USING VARIABLES IN Formatting

Perfect Writer offers a unique formatting option that allows the use of ‘alphanumeric variables,’—that is, strings of numbers or words that, for one reason or another, change during the course of a document. The following examples illustrate the use of ‘variables.’

The STRING/VALUE Formatting Procedure (for use with Word variables)

Suppose that you are preparing a form letter that will be sent to a number of similar institutions. In each version of the letter the name of the institution will be mentioned perhaps several times.

Through a simple command procedure, you can instruct Perfect Writer to insert the name of each separate institution into each of the different letters as it is prepared.

Two commands are used to accomplish this:

1. @STRING: At the beginning of the document, it assigns a name to a longer string of characters or words. For example,

   @STRING(School = "Massachusetts Institute of Technology")

   This STRING command tells Perfect Writer that throughout the first document being printed the variable name ‘school’ will stand for "Massachusetts Institute of Technology."
2. @VALUE: Causes the string of words assigned to the variable name by the @STRING command to be inserted into the text. For example,

**Command Form:**

There are several major centers for research on artificial intelligence. Among these @VALUE (school) is considered the leader. Much of the fundamental research derives from work done at @VALUE(school).

**Result:**

There are several major centers for research on artificial intelligence. Among these Massachusetts Institute of Technology is considered the leader. Much of the fundamental research derives from work done at Massachusetts Institute of Technology.
The great convenience in using this STRING/VALUE procedure is that when the time comes to change the institution name, there is no need for a search and replace procedure, followed by a retyping. Simply reassign a new institution name to the variable 'school,' using the same @STRING format command at the beginning of the document.

@STRING{school = Stanford University}

Perfect Writer automatically makes the substitution everywhere in the letter.

Command Form:

There are several major centers for research on artificial intelligence. Among these @VALUE(school) is considered the leader. Much of the fundamental research derives from work done at @VALUE(school).

Result:

There are several major centers for research on artificial intelligence. Among these Stanford University is considered the leader. Much of the fundamental research derives from work done at Stanford University.
Predefined Word Variables

Perfect Writer 'predefines' certain word variables, which means that a @STRING command is not needed to assign values, since they automatically take their values from the context of the document you are writing. These predefined word variables are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHAPERTITLE</td>
<td>The title of the current chapter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SECTIONTITLE</td>
<td>The title of the current section.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBSECTIONTITLE</td>
<td>The title of the current subsection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARAGRAPHTITLE</td>
<td>The title of the current paragraph.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPENDIXTITLE</td>
<td>The title of the current appendix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPENDIXSECTIONTITLE</td>
<td>The title of the current appendix section title.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When used with the @VALUE command, these predefined word variables insert the title of the current chapter, section, paragraph, etc., into the text. They are particularly useful with the PAGEHEADING and PAGEFOOTING format commands (see Chapter XVI, pages 196-200 for examples of these commands).
@TITLE
The TITLE Command

Causes the name of the current section to be inserted into the text. Most useful as a ‘dummy’ in specifying a title in a pageheading or a pagefooting when that title has not yet been selected, or is likely to be changed in the course of editing. Uses ONLY the following sectioning names: CHAPTR, SECTION, SUBSECTION, PARAGRAPH, APPENDIX, and APPENDIXSECTION.

Command Form:

@CHAPTER(No title yet)
@PAGEHEADING(Left = "@TITLE(CHAPTER)", Right = "Perfect Writer")

Result:
The SET/REF Formatting Procedure (for use with Numeric variables)

Numeric variables find their greatest usefulness in long documents, where 'backward references' need to be made—that is, references to portions of text in earlier chapters, sections, paragraphs, etc.

Perfect Writer will automatically determine the page number (chapter, section or paragraph number) where an earlier reference occurred, and insert it at the specified point in the document.

To do this Perfect Writer makes use of 'counters' which automatically keep track of chapter numbers, page numbers, section numbers, etc. These 'counters' are appropriately named:

- page
- chapter
- section
- subsection
- paragraph
- appendix
- appendixsection

Two commands are used in connection with counters to achieve backward referencing:

1. **@SET**: This command assigns a variable name of your choice to a counter.
2. **@REF**: This format command accomplishes the backward reference by inserting the value of the counter assigned by @SET into the forward position in your document.

Though this formal description sounds involved, the procedure is actually quite simple.
Example:

Suppose that early in your document you mention some item—a name, concept, idea, whatever—that you know you will later be referencing. In that later reference you will want to cite the page, chapter, or section number on which your mention of the item occurred.

Normally this would present a difficulty, since your document has not yet been typed, and therefore not apportioned into pages, sections, etc. Until now the solution has been to fill in the backward page references as you type the document. But this is risky, because suppose you later add new material which changes the paging. You must go through the entire procedure again of finding and correcting all of your backward page references.

Perfect Writer takes care of this problem automatically in the following easy steps:

1. Using the @SET command, tag the first mention of the item to be referenced with a variable name, setting this variable name equal to the appropriate 'counter' you wish to reference by (page, chapter, section, etc.). For example,

   There are several major centers for research on artificial intelligence. Among these, Massachusetts Institute of Technology is considered the leader. Much of the fundamental research derives from work done at Massachusetts Institute of Technology. @SET[MIT = page]

   Here you have tagged a discussion of the 'Massachusetts Institute of Technology' with the variable name 'MIT,' and have set this variable name equal to the counter 'page.'
2. Later in your document when you wish to refer to the page on which this discussion of MIT occurred, insert the @REF command in the following way:

Command Form:

```
..................................................

.................................................. as has been discussed (see page @REF[MIT]), the Massachusetts Institute of Technology represents ...........................................
```

Result:

```
..................................................

.................................................. as has been discussed (see page 17), the Massachusetts Institute of Technology represents ...........................................
```

The SET/REF format procedure is not affected by the addition or subtraction of pages. Because only variable names have been used, changes in the overall document pagination are automatically adjusted for. Thus, once having placed them you never again have to worry about the correctness of your backward reference.

The SET/REF format commands (with counters) are particularly helpful when formatting pageheadings and pagefootings.
Chapter XVIII
DOCUMENT STYLE COMMANDS

Document style commands control the printed output of your document, including such aspects as margin settings, footnote style, line spacing, justification, indentation, paper size, the printing device to be used, and more.

The DEVICE Command

Causes Perfect Writer to format your document to the specifications of the named printing device that was described during installation of Perfect Writer.

If used, the DEVICE command must be the first command, preceding all other text of a document.

Command Form:

@DEVICE(DeviceName)

The device named must have been defined with the PFCONFIG.COM program. Perfect Writer will format the document for the named device (see Installation Appendix.). You may configure more than one device.
STYLE PARAMETER Commands

Style parameter commands allow you to alter Perfect Writer's formatting default settings to your particular tastes, by changing such things as margins, indentions, line spacing, and spacing between paragraphs, not only for the document as a whole, but for each of the format options that may have been used in the document.

Style parameter commands, if used, can appear ONLY AT THE BEGINNING of your document, following the @DEVICE command, and preceding everything else.

Command Form:

Style parameter commands can be given singly or in combination. For example:

@STYLE(bottommargin 3 lines)
@STYLE(topmargin 3 lines)
@STYLE(leftmargin 8 chars)

or

@STYLE(bottommargin 3 lines, topmargin 3 lines, leftmargin 8 chars,...etc.)

Notice the spacing that style parameters take. Words are merged (i.e. bottommargin, not bottom margin). When used in combination each style parameter is separated from the others by a comma.

Many style parameters use 'dimensioned numbers' to express the values they hold, such as: "3 lines," "8 characters" (or "8 chars"). Some style parameter commands present 'Yes/No' options, while others require a word or words to define their value.

Following are the various style parameter commands. Any of these can be altered as you desire, using the command form shown. The values given in the examples are the default values that are automatically provided at the time of configuration.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Above</strong></th>
<th>The number of lines that precede certain format options, in particular: General text formats and lists.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@STYLE(above 1 line) [default]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Below</strong></td>
<td>The number of lines that follow certain format options, in particular: Environment and list formats.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@STYLE(Below 1 line) [default]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bottommargin</strong></td>
<td>The distance between the last text printed on the page (including pagefootings) and the bottom of the sheet of paper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@STYLE(bottommargin 3 lines) [default]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chapter or Chapters</strong></td>
<td>Determines whether section numbering of a document begins with chapters and appendices, or with sections and appendixsections. If &quot;yes,&quot; chapters and appendices are numbered. If &quot;no,&quot; numbering begins with sections and appendixsections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@STYLE(chapters yes) [default]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Footerspacing</strong></td>
<td>The distance between the end of the running text and the pagefooting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@STYLE(footerspacing 3 lines) [default]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Footpush</strong></td>
<td>Determines how note and footnote reference numbers are placed in the text. If &quot;yes,&quot; a superscripted number is used. If &quot;no,&quot; the number is enclosed in brackets, [ ].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@STYLE(footpush yes) [default]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Headerspacing
The distance between the pageheading and the beginning of the running text.

@STYLE(headerspacing 3 lines) [default]

### Indent or Indentation
Determines how far the first line of a paragraph is indented in TEXT and QUOTATION formats, as well as how far the first line is outdented from the paragraph in the UNDENT format.

@STYLE(indent 2 chars) [default]

### Justification
Determines whether the right margin will be justified in formats that 'fill' the lines. If "yes," the right margin will be made even and straight. If "no," the right margin will be left ragged.

@STYLE(justification yes) [default]

### Leftmargin
The distance between the left edge of the sheet of paper to the beginning of any printing.

@STYLE(leftmargin 8 chars) [default]

### Levelhang
Specifies the form of paragraphs in the LEVEL format. If "yes," the paragraph number is undented from the body of the paragraph. If "no," the number is included in the body of the paragraph.

@STYLE(levelhang no) [default]
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Levelindent</strong></th>
<th>Specifies whether the paragraphs of nested LEVEL formats should be indented from each other. If &quot;yes,&quot; nested format paragraphs are indented. If &quot;no,&quot; they are not.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Linewidth</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the length of a printed line. This distance is added to the leftmargin to obtain a new rightmargin. If later the rightmargin or paperwidth parameter is given, the value given here will be discarded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Notes</strong></td>
<td>Specifies where footnotes are to be placed. If &quot;bottom,&quot; they are placed at the bottom of the page where the reference occurs. If &quot;endnote,&quot; they are placed together at the end of the printed document. If &quot;inline,&quot; they are placed in the text at the point of reference, enclosed in brackets, [ ].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Paperlength</strong></td>
<td>The height of the sheet of paper being used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Paperwidth</strong></td>
<td>The width of the sheet of paper being used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rightmargin</strong></td>
<td>The distance between the last printed character and the right edge of the paper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scriptpush</strong></td>
<td>Determines whether extra lines are left above or below lines containing super- and subscript. If &quot;yes,&quot; an extra blank line will be inserted (to help prevent confusing a superscript on one line with a subscript on the previous line, and vice versa). If &quot;no,&quot; the extra line will not be inserted. This command is automatically set to &quot;no&quot; for devices that cannot half-space vertically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Spacing</strong></td>
<td>Determines the spacing between lines. Using &quot;2 lines&quot; causes double spacing, &quot;3 lines&quot; triple spacing, etc. Do not set this value to less than one line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Spread</strong></td>
<td>Determines the distance [in lines] between paragraphs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Topmargin</strong></td>
<td>The distance between the top of the sheet of paper and the first line of text, including the pageheading if it is used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```markdown
@STYLE(scriptpush yes) [default]
@STYLE(spacing 1 line) [default]
@STYLE(spread 1 line) [default]
@STYLE(topmargin 3 lines) [default]
```
Chapter XIX

DOCUMENT DESIGN LESSONS

This set of lessons is designed to introduce you to Perfect Writer's document design system. The easiest way to learn a new program is by using it, so these lessons will primarily consist of source documents (the file you create on disk) and formatted results.

Each lesson after Lesson 1 is an example. Examples show a source document and the output you get after running it through Perfect Writer. At the bottom of the example source document page is a description of each new command or feature used. The example source documents are stored on the Perfect Writer master disk, so don't be afraid to play around with the copies on your personal disk—take each new example and change it around, to see what you get as output.

We think that after becoming familiar with the document design features of Perfect Writer and using them on one or two documents of your own, you will use them as a matter of course, every time you compose text on the computer.
LESSON 1

In this lesson, you will learn how to run Perfect Writer to produce output on your terminal.

Input document files for Perfect Writer always have the extension "".MSS."" This stands for ""ManuScript Source."" For example, the file we will be working with in this lesson is called ""TEXT1.MSS."" Remember that it may be called ""B:TEXT1.MSS"" or the like, if you have a multiple-disk computer system.

In order to print a document with Perfect Writer you must select option F, ""format a file"" from the Main Selection Menu. Perfect Writer will respond by asking for the filename of the document to be printed. After you enter the filename, Perfect Writer will transfer you to the Perfect Format Selection Menu. From this menu you may elect to print a copy to either the console (option C) or the printer (option P). When you print directly from the format program, Perfect Writer will not be able to use all of the features available on your printer. For our purposes here, however, you will get an adequate copy of what is in your file.

Try printing a document now. From the main menu select F, to format a file, and then enter the filename ""TEXT1.MSS"". Since Perfect Format assumes the "".MSS"" extension, all you have to enter is ""TEXT1"". From the Perfect Format menu select the console option (""C"") and then type ""G"" for the program to go. The output from Perfect Format should look like the formatted document in Figure 2. If all goes well, then print Lesson 1 on your printer with the P option.

You should note that unless you select the VERBATIM option (which prints text exactly as it appears on the screen) from the Perfect Formatter Selection Menu, Perfect Writer will group text into justified paragraphs. Text that you do not want in justified paragraphs needs to be formatted using one of the other formats such as VERBATIM, ADDRESS, FLUSHLEFT, EXAMPLE, DISPLAY, QUOTATION and the other environments described in the lessons to follow.
Several error messages are possible, though unlikely, at this point. They are:

- Can't open file TEXT1.MSS. This may occur if the disk you are using has no lesson input text on it. Take a look at the directory for your disks (use the D option) and make sure that you have typed the filename correctly.

- Can't find the configuration file. If this happens, find the person who installed the Perfect Writer program and ask him or her to help you. The Installation Guide may be of some help here.

Notice that the first page shows you the input to Perfect Writer, and the second the output from it. You can examine the input by selecting option E from the main menu and entering the TEXT1.MSS filename.
The Input File:

@VERBATIM {The improvement in human knowledge and survival potential following the invention of writing was immense. There was also an improvement in self-reliance: It is possible to learn at least the basics of an art or a science from a book and not be dependent on the lucky accident that there is a nearby master craftsman to whom we may apprentice ourselves.}

When all is said and done, the invention of writing must be viewed not only as a brilliant innovation but as a surpassing good for humanity. I believe the same will be said of those who are today devising computers and programs at the edge of machine intelligence. The next major structural development in human intelligence is likely to be a partnership between intelligent humans and intelligent machines (from The Dragons of Eden by Carl Sagan, pages 224-5).

TEXT1.MSS
The Output:

The improvement in human knowledge and survival potential following the invention of writing was immense. There was also an improvement in self-reliance: It is possible to learn at least the basics of an art or science from a book and not be dependent on the lucky accident that there is a nearby master craftsman to whom we may apprentice ourselves.

When all is said and done, the invention of writing must be viewed not only as a brilliant innovation but as a surpassing good for humanity. I believe the same will be said of those who are today devising computers and programs at the edge of machine intelligence. The next major structural development in human intelligence is likely to be a partnership between intelligent humans and intelligent machines (from The Dragons of Eden by Carl Sagan, pages 224-5).

TEXT1

Important

Note that the paragraphs have been either "filled" or "justified."

- "Filling" text means reading words from the manuscript file and putting as many as will fit on a single document line. This process will make each line as long as possible within the margins, just as a good typist would. The body of this definition is an example of filled text.

- "Justifying" text means taking a filled line and inserting extra space between words (or letters) in order to have a right margin perfectly aligned, somewhat akin to a newspaper column of print. The body of this definition is an example of justified text. This is the standard default. If you do not want this, then select the VERBATIM option from the 'Format Selection Menu.'

- Note that paragraph indentation is always uniform in the output, regardless of how the input looks. Likewise the blank space in between paragraphs is always the same, regardless of how the input document looks.

- The choices about filling, justifying, spacing, and indentation have been set up for you in what is called the "configuration file." These can be changed. See the Style commands, Chapter XVIII.
LESSON 2: A Letter

This lesson uses several simple Perfect Writer "format commands." Format commands always begin with the at-sign, "@." They may appear anywhere in the text. To Perfect Writer's document design program, anything that begins with an @-sign is a command; therefore, in order to insert a real @-sign into your document, you must type a double-@ ("@@") in your manuscript file.

Perfect Writer uses two types of format commands:

**environment**  The environment format command affects the form of the output document for a particular block of input manuscript text. This type of format command is called an environment command. The text affected by the format command is fenced, with the text between the fences becoming the environment formatted by the command.

**directive**  The directive format command issues a specific directive to change the output document, and is not related to any particular fenced portion of text in the input manuscript.

In order to see the result of formatting a particular letter, select F from the main menu and enter the filename:

TEXT2.MSS

Select option P and then G to start the printing of Lesson 2.

In addition, as you look at the console during printing, you will see numbers while the text is being formatted. These reflect the page the formatting is on at the time.
The Input File:

@ADDRESS(Perfect Software, Inc.
1400 Shattuck Avenue
Berkeley, CA 94709)

@FLUSHLEFT(Robert Hemingway
1234 Main Street
Centerville, IL 60601)

@TEXT{ Dear Mr. Hemingway:
Thank you for your recent letter and comments about Perfect Writer. We are delighted to receive such comments and, as you can tell, we too are pleased with the performance of Perfect Writer.

Your suggestions and comments are very useful. Thanks again for your consideration. }

@CENTER(Be sure to see our other software!)

@CLOSING(Cordially,

Don Cochran)

TEXT2.MSS

---

1 The ADDRESS environment is followed immediately by the "fences" surrounding the text. [No spaces are allowed between the command name and the fence.] In this case, the fences are "\(\)" and "\(\)". As you can see in the CLOSING environment at the bottom, "\(\)" and "\(\)" work as well. We used them there because of the parentheses inside the text. Likewise, single and double quotes can be used as text fences for formatting environments. In general, use a different fence when it appears within the text being formatted.

2 The FLUSHLEFT environment.command places each line against the left margin. There is also a FLUSHRIGHT environment. CLOSING, ADDRESS, and CENTER all place the text in appropriated places on the page—see the output.

3 Any text not enclosed in any other environment (here, the main body of the letter) is formatted the same way as what you saw in Lesson 1 (i.e., it is grouped into justified paragraphs).
Dear Mr. Hemingway:

Thank you for your recent letter and comments about Perfect Writer. We are delighted to receive such comments and, as you can tell, we too are pleased with the performance of Perfect Writer.

Your suggestions and comments are very useful. Thanks again for your consideration.

Be sure to see our other software!

Cordially,

Don Cochran
LESSON 3: Boilerplate Letter and Form Letter

This lesson illustrates the preparation of documents that use pieces of other documents and console input to produce the finished product.

Two new commands are used in the examples which follow: "@INCLUDE" and "@MESSAGE." The INCLUDE command allows text to be taken from another .MSS file and inserted into the current file at that point. The MESSAGE command prints out a message to the console.

The first example shows a letter made up of sections of standard boilerplate text. (The word "boilerplate" comes from journalism, where standard typeset features were usually available premade in plates or mats, rather than set by hand.) To look at the output, select option F and enter the filename, "TEXT3A.MSS" from the format menu, select options P and then G.
The Input File:

@INCLUDE(ADDRESS.MSS)
@FLUSHLEFT(Robert Hemingway
1234 Main Street
Centerville, IL 60601)
@FLUSHLEFT(Dear Mr. Hemingway:)
   Thank you for your recent letter and comments about
Perfect Writer. We are delighted to receive such comments, and
as you can tell, we too are pleased with the software engineering
advances embodied in Perfect Writer.

   You mentioned an interest in Perfect Speller and our
family of related software. Let me briefly tell you about each.

@INCLUDE(SPELLER.MSS)
@INCLUDE(FILER.MSS)
@CENTER(Again, we appreciate your kind words.)
@CLOSING(Sincerely,

Don Cochran)

TEXT3A.MSS

\[1\] If you use Perfect Writer to edit the files ADDRESS.MSS, SPELLER.MSS, and FILER.MSS, you will see the
text which was originally included in our letter.
Robert Hemingway  
1234 Main Street  
Centerville, IL 60601

Dear Mr. Hemingway:

Thank you for your recent letter and comments about Perfect Writer. We are delighted to receive such comments, and as you can tell, we too are pleased with the software engineering advances embodied in Perfect Writer.

You mentioned an interest in Perfect Speller and our family of related software. Let me briefly tell you about each.

PERFECT SPELLER

Perfect Speller is an automatic proofreader which checks your editing against an equivalent 50,000 word dictionary. After editing a text in Perfect Writer a simple keystroke command and the text is checked against Perfect Speller's dictionary for mismatches. It's as simple as that.

PERFECT FILER

Perfect Filer is a full feature mailing list and information management system. Form letters and documents prepared with Perfect Writer can be managed and prepared by Perfect Filer.

Again, we appreciate your kind words.

Sincerely,

Don Cochran
Form Letter with Console Input

For the next example, you will be asked to enter at the console specific information needed for the letter being formatted. Type in the requested information from the console. As you enter information you may make mistakes. In this case, a few keys have special meanings [see pages XVII-205 to XVII-206]:

- When you type a Control-Z, this tells Perfect Writer that you are done entering console input.
- If you want to erase the last character you typed, type the backspace or delete key.
- If you want to erase the entire line you have just been typing, type a Control-U. (In order to get back to the previous line of typing, you can hit the delete or backspace keys to get rid of the carriage return.)
- If you want to see everything you have just typed in order to proofread it just before typing the Control-Z, type Control-R [for Redisplay] and Perfect Writer will play back your typing up to that point.

To get started, select F and enter TEXT3B.MSS. Then select options P and then G.

The Input File:

```
@INCLUDE(ADDRESS)
@FLUSHLEFT[
@MESSAGE(Enter full name and address:)

@INCLUDE(CON:)]
@FLUSHLEFT[Dear @MESSAGE(Enter first name:)]

Thank you for your recent letter and comments about Perfect Writer. We are delighted to receive such comments and, as you can tell, we too are pleased with the software engineering advances embodied in Perfect Writer.

You mention an interest in @MESSAGE(What software is client interested in?)@INCLUDE(CON:) and our family of related software. Let me briefly tell you about each.

@INCLUDE(SPELLER)
@INCLUDE(FILER)
@CENTER(Be sure to see our software at your local computer store!)
@CLOSING[Cordially,
 Don Cochran]

TEXT3B.MSS
```

1 The INCLUDE to “CON:” means to include text taken from the CONsole rather than a text file.
Robert Hemingway
1234 Main Street
Centerville, IL 60601

Dear Bob:

Thank you for your recent letter and comments about Perfect Writer. We are delighted to receive such comments, and, as you can tell, we too are pleased with the software engineering advances embodied in Perfect Writer.

You mentioned an interest in Perfect Speller and our family of related software. Let me briefly tell you about each.

PERFECT SPELLER

Perfect Speller is an automatic proofreader which checks your editing against an equivalent 50,000 word dictionary. After editing a text in Perfect Writer a simple keystroke command and the text is checked against Perfect Speller's dictionary for mismatches. It's as simple as that.

PERFECT FILER

Perfect Filer is a full feature mailing list and information management system. Form letters and documents prepared with Perfect Writer can be managed and prepared by Perfect Filer.

Be sure to see our software at your local computer store!

Cordially,

Don Cochran
LESSON 4: An Office Memorandum

This lesson will introduce several commands for making lists or descriptions of things.

The Input File:

@STRING(SUM = "Perfect Writer")¹

@BEGIN(FLUSHLEFT)²
To:   Personal Computer Users
From: Perfect Software, Inc.

Subject: Features of @VALUE(SUM)³
@END(FLUSHLEFT)
@CENTER(-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------)

Perfect Writer has the advanced features you would expect to find in expensive word processors, such as:

@BEGIN(ENUMERATE)⁴

---

¹ The STRING directive @STRING(X = Y) assigns the value of string Y to name X. This also works for assigning values from one name to another; if Y is not a quoted string, it is looked up in a list of names already set by the STRING directive.

² The BEGIN / END directives are used for environments which contain a lot of text. They ensure that, regardless of what standard fences are contained in the text, Perfect Writer will not prematurely finish an environment’s formatting.

³ The VALUE directive inserts the string previously assigned to the name inside the fences into the output document. @STRING and @VALUE are useful when the string to be inserted is used several times, is easy to misspell, or is very long.

⁴ The ENUMERATE environment is used to make numbered lists of items or points to be mentioned. The ITEMIZE environment is used to make similar unnumbered lists. These can be nested within themselves or each other; nested ITEMIZE lists alternate between using a ".-" and a "*-" for marking each item. The blank lines between each item are what tell Perfect Writer that it is time to start a new item.
The full range of \texttt{@VALUE(SUM)} document design options that allow you to automatically format letters, outlines, form letters, memorandum, articles, books or other types of documents.

Full cursor controls that allow you to move quickly and easily anywhere in the document in order to:
\texttt{@ITEMIZE}(insert delete
search, search and replace, and search and replace with query)
\texttt{@END(ENUMERATE)}

What makes \texttt{@VALUE(SUM)} unique, however, are the features you won't find in other word processors costing many times its price, such as:
\texttt{@BEGIN(DESCRIPTION)}

virtual memory@/Allows you to edit a full length novel as easily as you would edit a letter.
dual display@/Allows you to divide the screen into two parts, each showing a different document.
\texttt{@END(DESCRIPTION)}

We hope this very brief description encourages you to take a closer look at all the numerous features of \texttt{@VALUE(SUM)}.

\texttt{TEXT4.MSS}

\textsuperscript{5} The \texttt{DESCRIPTION} environment is used for just that—descriptions. It places the item to be described flush left to the margin and the description is heavily indented text on the right-hand side of the page. The "@/" command which appears in each description block makes Perfect Writer skip over to the description block.
The Output:

To: Personal Computer Users  
From: Perfect Software, Inc.  
Subject: Features of Perfect Writer

Perfect Writer has the advanced features you would expect to find in expensive word processors, such as:

1. The full range of Perfect Writer document design options that allow you to automatically format letters, outlines, form letters, memorandum, articles, books or other types of documents.

2. Full cursor controls that allow you to move quickly and easily anywhere in the document in order to:
   - insert
   - delete
   - search, search and replace, and search and replace with query)

What makes Perfect Writer unique, however, are the features you won't find in other word processors costing many times its price, such as:

virtual memory Allows you to edit a full length novel as easily as you would edit a letter.

dual display Allows you to divide the screen into two parts, each showing a different document.

We hope this very brief description encourages you to take a closer look at all the numerous features of Perfect Writer.
LESSON 5: Addressing an Envelope

This lesson will teach you about several commands which are useful when preparing documents not intended for 8.5 by 11 inch paper.

The Input File

@STYLE(paperwidth = 9 inches)
@STYLE(paperlength = 4 inches)
@STYLE(topmargin = 1 lines, bottommargin = 1 lines, lefthemargin = 1 characters, righthemargin = 1 characters)
@STYLE(headerspacing = 0 lines, footerspacing = 0 lines)
@PAGEFOOTING()
@FLUSHLEFT(
Perfect Software, Inc.
1400 Shattuck Avenue
Berkeley, CA 94709
@BLANKSPACE(8 lines)
@ADDRESS(
Robert Hemingway
1234 Main Street
Centerville, IL 60601)
@NEWPAGE

TEXTS.MSS

1 The @STYLE command allows you to set formatting parameters which are directly related to layout rather than descriptive of the text itself. The general format is @STYLE(parameter1 = value1, parameter2 = value2, ...). The style parameters we have set here have the obvious meanings. What we have done is to make most of the envelope useable for printing on.

2 Parameters to commands which express distances are composed of an integer followed by a unit name. The units we've used here are inches, lines, and characters.

3 Headerspacing is the distance between the header line and the start of the text, and footerspacing is the distance between the end of the text and the footer line. Even though the heading and footing lines do not appear, there is still space left, and we have just removed it.

4 As you may have noticed, all the previous lessons were printed out with page numbers at the bottom of them. The way to turn off page numbering is to give an explicit pagefooting which is empty. This must be the very first command. [@PAGEFOOTING()].

5 The @BLANKSPACE command is given a number of lines to skip.

6 The @NEWPAGE directive forces Perfect Writer to go to the next page immediately (in this case, the next envelope).
The Output:

Perfect Software, Inc.
1400 Shattuck Avenue
Berkeley, CA 94709

Robert Hemingway
1234 Main Street
Centerville, IL 60601
LESSON 6: A Technical Paper

Before we go on to this example, we need to introduce a new program called "Perfect Printer." Perfect Printer is used to print output which Perfect Writer's format program produces. Up to this point, we have been letting Perfect Formatter print the document as it formats it. From now on, you will probably use Perfect Printer to print things after Perfect Formatter has formatted them.

Why? Well, Perfect Writer's format program knows lots of things about text, but not very much about printers. So, if your document uses subscripts, partial line spacing, proportional-space type justification, or most of the other fancy printing features, you must use Perfect Printer.

Use Perfect Printer to print the following text. From the main menu select option F and enter "TEXT6.MSS" for the filename. From the Perfect Formatter Selection Menu, enter P and then G.

After the document is formatted you will need to print it. From the main menu select option P and enter "TEXT6" for the filename. From the Perfect Printer Selection Menu enter G.

Just as Perfect Formatter automatically assumes " .MSS," Perfect Printer assumes " .FIN." Include the "-pause" option on the command line if you want to hand-feed paper. This option stops at the end of each output page and waits for you to type any character on the console running Perfect Printer, so that you can prepare the printer and paper.

This example is a short excerpt from the first chapter in a book of technical papers. It is an overview of computer system security.
The Input File:

@PAGEFOOTING(center = "@VALUE(Page)")
@CHAPTER(Computer System Security)
@SECTION(Physical Security)
@SUBSECTION(Computer Room Security)
@INDEX(computer room security)

There are three basic reasons for maintaining computer room security. These are:

@ENUMERATE[Preventing access to the computer itself.

Preventing access to the data physically contained in the computer.

Preventing access to the communication lines leading out of the computer.]

---

1 The PAGEHEADING and PAGEFOOTING directives are used to specify the parts of the headings and footings for each page of the paper. There are three parts to each: the left, the center, and the right. You set each part as shown here. You may notice that the page footing we specified here is itself a Perfect Writer's format program command. The variable "page" is automatically changed at the start of each new page, so our footing will always contain the current page number.

2 The CHAPTER directive causes all the bookkeeping involved with starting a new chapter to begin. Since this was the first chapter of the set, it was given chapter number one. An entry was automatically made in the table of contents containing the chapter title, number, and the page on which it began. A new page was started, and the chapter title was centered in a boldface heading.

3 The SECTION directive does many things which are similar to the CHAPTER directive: it makes an entry in the table of contents, prints out a header (slightly less important-looking than the chapter header), leaves some blank space, and numbers the sections sequentially. Since this was the first section in the first chapter, it was given the number "1.1."

4 The SUBSECTION directive is similar to the SECTION directive. It adds another number to the label, and does not underline the title of the subsection.

5 The INDEX directive requests that an entry in the index be made, containing the text inside the fences and the page number on which the entry occurs. See example 1. Use of this command instructs Perfect Writer to produce an alphabetized index at the end of the document.
There are simple reasons to keep people away from the computer itself: a vandal can physically destroy the equipment or disrupt the service it provides. Either can be costly, but both are easily discovered (after the fact!).

Where there is a computer, there are usually disk and tape drives and the storage media they use in close proximity. Theft of online media is easy to detect (most computer systems complain if you remove a disk or tape from the drive while it is in use!), but if the data contained therein is itself secret or valuable, detection is not as important as prevention. Theft of off-line media (e.g. backup tapes) is almost as easy to detect, ...

---

The PARAGRAPH directive is the lowest level of numbering available in documents. In particular, this paragraph would be numbered 1.1.1.1! Of course, you don’t have to number your paragraphs—to get a plain new paragraph, remember, you just use a blank line in the document.

The @I environment says to italicize the text inside the fences. Since most printers do not have italics, the text is usually underlined instead. To get boldface text, use the @B directive [i.e., @B{text to be boldfaced}].
Chapter 1

Computer System Security

1.1 Physical Security

1.1.1 Computer Room Security

There are three basic reasons for maintaining computer room security. These are:

1. Preventing access to the computer itself.
2. Preventing access to the data physically contained in the computer.
3. Preventing access to the communication lines leading out of the computer.

1.1.1.1 Computer access

There are simple reasons to keep people away from the computer itself: a vandal can physically destroy the equipment or disrupt the service it provides. Either can be costly, but both are easily discovered (after the fact!).

1.1.1.2 Physical data access

Where there is a computer, there are usually disk and tape drives and the storage media they use in close proximity. Theft of online media is easy to detect (*most* computer systems complain if you remove a disk or tape from the drive while it is in use!), but if the data contained therein is itself secret or valuable, detection is not as important as prevention. Theft of off-line media (e.g. backup tapes) is almost as easy to detect, ...
Index

computer room security 4

Example 1
by Robert B. Wesson, Ph.D.

COPYRIGHT
Copyright, 1983 by Perfect Software, Inc. All rights reserved worldwide. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any human or computer language in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, manual or otherwise, without the express written permission of Perfect Software, Inc., 1400 Shattuck Avenue, Berkeley, California 94709.

DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY
Perfect Software, Inc. makes no representations or warranties, either express or implied, with respect to this manual and accompanying software and specifically disclaims any implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose. This manual and accompanying software are sold "as is" and Perfect Software will in no event be liable for direct, indirect, incidental or consequential damages resulting from any defect, error or failure to perform.

TRADEMARK
Perfect Writer™, Perfect Speller™, Perfect Mailer™, Perfect Sort™, Perfect Terminal™, Perfect Messenger™, Perfect Calc™, Perfect Ledger™, Perfect Software™, and the Perfect™ prefix are trademarks of Perfect Software, Inc.

CP/M is a trademark of Digital Research.
Chapter I

INTRODUCTION

Perfect Speller is an advanced software spelling checker that will identify and correct typing and spelling errors. Designed to work directly with the Perfect Writer word processor, Perfect Speller is implemented by a single command that causes your document to be checked against a machine readable dictionary equivalent to more than 50,000 words. After finding words that do not match words in the dictionary, Perfect Speller allows you to review the mismatched words, marking those that are actually misspelled, while ignoring those that are not (e.g., proper names). Perfect Speller then takes you to each word you have marked in your document, stopping to allow you either to correct it, add it to the Perfect Speller dictionary, or ignore it.

Perfect Speller can look up about 4,000 words per minute on a typical microcomputer. It typically processes a page of single spaced text in seven seconds and a 20-page document in less than three minutes (compared to more than 10 minutes for the premier IBM Displaywriter).

Perfect Speller is extremely easy to learn. To begin using it to correct your spelling and typing errors, you need only to read the next section, which presents a step-by-step tutorial on using Perfect Speller. The remaining chapters of the manual present the fine points of Perfect Speller’s operation. For example, Perfect Speller will allow the mismatched words of a document to be printed either to your terminal or to a file. Lists of new words can be entered from a file directly into Perfect Speller’s dictionary. In addition, it is possible to create your own specialized dictionaries, to meet whatever particular needs you may have. (Several specialized dictionaries are currently available for Perfect Speller, including medical, legal, real estate, business, insurance and several foreign language dictionaries.)
Chapter II

USING PERFECT SPELLE

[IMPORTANT: Before beginning this tutorial be sure that you have read Appendix A and have configured Perfect Speller for your particular computer system. For the purposes of this tutorial, we will assume that all needed Perfect Speller and Perfect Writer files are present on your default disk.]

--A TUTORIAL--

Suppose that you have just finished typing on Perfect Writer the following file, named "letter.mss", and now wish to check for misspelled or mistyped words:

Contents of "letter.mss"

Dear Mr. Thompson:

This is a sample letter that we will check using Perfect Speller. We have intentionally made errors two illustrate how Perfect Speller works. After you create a letter with Perfect Writer you can check its spelling by simply entering the CHECK SPELLING command. After checking your letter (or other document) Perfect Speller takes you to each misspelled word and lets you correct it. The simplicity of this exercise illustrates that Perfect Speller is truly a 'user friendly' in-context spelling checker.
STEP 1:
Enter Spell Mode by typing the CHECK SPELLING command:

CTRL X S

[While holding the Control key down, press the 'X' key, then release the Control key and press the 'S' key.]

STEP 2:
Following an initial few seconds that are required to read the large dictionary file from disk to machine memory, Perfect Speller asks for the name of the file to be checked.

Perfect Speller begins checking "letter.mss" for misspelled words. [This is a process that will take from a few seconds to a couple of minutes depending upon the length of the document.] As it works, Perfect Speller will display the total number of words processed together with the number of words not recognized. For this example:

84 words processed. 6 words not recognized.
Scan list of unrecognized words now<yes>?
STEP 3:
Answering "No" causes Perfect Speller to mark the unrecognized words in your document and to transfer you back to Perfect Writer where you can correct each misspelled word in context.

Answering "Yes" instructs Perfect Speller to begin displaying, alphabetically and one at a time, the words from your document which were not found in its dictionary. For this example, the first misspelled word on Perfect Speller's alphabetized list would be:

\[\text{mispelled?}\]

1 If you hit the \(<\text{RETURN}>\text{key or carriage return in response to this question, then Perfect Speller will supply the default answer indicated within the brackets.}\]
STEP 4:
At this point you have the following command options:

**SCAN COMMANDS**

a - ADD word to dictionary. (Select this option for words which are spelled correctly and which you use frequently. Perfect Speller will collect these words and add them to its dictionary at the end of the spelling session.)

i - IGNORE word. (Use this response for those words which are spelled correctly, but which you do not want to add to the dictionary—e.g. proper names.)

c - Mark word to CHANGE. (Select this option for words which are actually misspelled or for words which you would like to examine in context.)

r - Enter the word's ROOT into the dictionary. (If the word contains a prefix or suffix, use this response to enter its root into the dictionary. Perfect Speller will then be able to recognize not only that particular word but many of its derivations as well. Perfect Speller will ask you to enter the word root, followed by a carriage return.)

e - Mark remaining words and EDIT text. (Use this option to discontinue scanning the words. Perfect Speller transfers you directly to your document to correct the words in context.)

? - Help! (Should you be in doubt what option to choose, this option will cause Perfect Speller to display all of its command options.)
STEP 5:
Since *mispelled* is actually *MISSpelled* you would select option "c - Mark word to CHANGE."

Perfect Speller automatically marks the word in your text and displays the next misspelled word from its list. The entire list of misspelled words for the document "letter.mss" would be:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTION</th>
<th>REASON</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mispelled?</td>
<td>c{hange}    {misspelled}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>other?</td>
<td>c            {mistyped}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sample?</td>
<td>c            {mistyped}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simply?</td>
<td>c            {misspelled}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thompson?</td>
<td>i{gnore}    {proper name}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuo?</td>
<td>c            {mistyped}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After you have finished reviewing the list of misspelled words Perfect Speller asks:

Exit directly to PW to correct LETTER.MSS<Yes>?
STEP 6:
If you answer "No," Perfect Speller will return you to the Perfect Writer Main Selection Menu.

Answering "Yes" transfers you to your document in Perfect Writer, the cursor positioned at the first word that you have marked for change during "scanning." Notice that all of the words that are misspelled have been marked with the sign "- S". Only the word before where the cursor is does not display this mark. The cursor will erase the mark as it moves from word to word.

Dear Mr. Thompson:

This is a sample letter that we will check using Perfect Speller. We have intentionally made errors to illustrate how Perfect Speller works. After you create a letter with Perfect Writer you can check its spelling by simply entering the CHECK SPELLING command. After checking your letter (or the document) Perfect Speller takes you to each misspelled word and lets you correct it. The simplicity of this exercise illustrates that Perfect Speller is truly a 'user friendly' in-context spelling checker.

2 As indicated earlier, hitting <RETURN> will cause Perfect Speller to provide the default value indicated within the brackets.
STEP 7:
At this point your options are essentially the same as before, except that now you are actually going to be correcting your document. The "in-context" correction commands are the same as before:

**IN-CONTEXT CORRECTION COMMANDS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADD</td>
<td>Selecting &quot;add&quot; causes the word to be added to Perfect Speller's dictionary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHANGE</td>
<td>IF you select &quot;change,&quot; Perfect Speller responds:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What should misspelled word be changed to? &lt;ESC&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit</td>
<td>If you select &quot;edit,&quot; Perfect Speller switches from Spell Mode to Normal Mode in Perfect Writer, thus allowing you to edit the file, changing the word and sentences as you wish. The remaining misspelled words remain marked to await your return to Spell Mode, which you can do by using the ADD MODE command (Control ----- X M and entering &quot;spell&quot;).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignore</td>
<td>Selecting &quot;Ignore&quot; causes Perfect Speller to skip to the next marked word, leaving the present marked word unchanged, but no longer marked for correction.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tutorial
ROOT
"Root" indicates that you wish to enter the root of this word into Perfect Speller's dictionary. Perfect Speller responds to this command with:

```
What is the root?<CR>
```

Type the root of the word followed by a carriage return. (For a discussion of word 'roots,' see Chapter III, page 268.)

HELP!
Select "help" and Perfect Writer displays the options currently available to you, namely:

```
A-Add, C-Change, E-Edit, I-Ignore, R-Root, ?-Help!,<Type CR Now>
```

STEP 8:
The cursor stands before Sampel, the first misspelled word that we marked in our document. To correct this word we select option "C-Change."

Perfect Writer responds in the Mode Line with:

```
What should 'sampel' be changed to?<ESC>:
```

Tutorial
STEP 9:
Enter the correct spelling, *sample*, followed by the Escape key.

Perfect Speller automatically changes *sampel* to *sample* in the text, afterwards moving the cursor to the next misspelled word, *simpley*, which would be corrected in the same fashion.

Notice that Perfect Speller did not identify the improper use of *two*, in the sentence, "We have intentionally made errors *two* illustrate... etc.'

STEP 10:
After you have reviewed and corrected all misspelled words you can either replace the old document with the corrected version using the SAVE FILE command:

CTRL X CTRL S

or you can save the corrected version under a new filename using the WRITE FILE command:

CTRL X CTRL W

After saving, your document is ready for output to the printer, which can be selected by returning to the main menu of Perfect Writer, using the QUIT command:

CTRL X CTRL C

END OF TUTORIAL
Chapter III
ABOUT THE DICTIONARY

If any words have been added to the dictionary, Perfect Speller writes the new, expanded dictionary to disk. In this process the old dictionary is normally deleted after the new one has been written. However, sometimes it happens that there is not enough room on disk to contain both the old and new dictionaries at once. In such a case Perfect Speller will offer you the opportunity of deleting the old dictionary first. Perfect Speller warns you that this is risky, since there is the danger that if the write operation should fail to complete, the dictionary will be lost. Naturally, you keep a backup copy of your important files (like the dictionary) on a separate disk, and so the danger only amounts to the inconvenience of having to recover your dictionary from your backup. In such an event, normally you will want Perfect Speller to go ahead and delete the old dictionary before writing out the new one and can answer yes to the "delete old dictionary..." offer.

When adding words to its dictionary, Perfect Speller uses a method which keeps the file the same size, but which increases very slightly the chance that Perfect Speller will miss an incorrect word. If, for example, you add a thousand words to the dictionary, you increase the chance of letting a misspelled error go undetected by roughly 1/20th of one percent (a probability equal to .0005). It should be understood that the chance of this happening increases the larger the dictionary becomes. For example, the following table shows the estimated frequency of undetected errors with the dictionary provided, together with the effect of adding 1,000 words to the dictionary.
Given these figures, you should use some restraint in adding words to the dictionary. Our experience has been that most users typically add a few hundred words or so at most, so this should be a minor constraint. Remember—if you need a dictionary for a specialized field such as law or medicine, call us. We’ve probably already constructed it. If you really do need to add large lists of words to the dictionary, please see Chapter V.

**What is a Root?**

A root is the basic element of a word from which a great many other words can be derived by the addition of prefixes and suffixes. For example, consider the word *restored*. *Restored* consists of the prefix *re-* , the root *store*, and the suffix *-ed*.

Perfect Speller already knows most possible prefixes and suffixes for English words. Therefore when a word like *restored* needs to be added to the dictionary we add only the root, i.e. *store*. This will enable Perfect Speller to recognize not only *restored*, but also words like *restore*, *storing*, *storage*, and *restoration*.

Some words, of course, do not have suffixes and prefixes that can be stripped away to reveal a root. In these cases, the word is unique and must be entered entirely.
Chapter IV

OPTIONAL PARAMETERS

Access Through the Menu

The tutorial in Chapter II illustrates the basic steps in using Perfect Speller to correct spelling errors in a document. The procedure is started simply by giving the \texttt{CHECK SPELLING} command, Control \texttt{------ X S}, while editing in the Perfect Writer editing mode.

Perfect Speller can also be invoked through Perfect Writer's Main Selection Menu, a procedure which offers slightly different options, and which we will discuss now. As you recall, Perfect Writer's Main Selection Menu looks like this:
Perfect Speller is represented in the menu as option "S—Check the spelling of a file."

Selecting this option causes Perfect Writer to respond with the message:

```
File to check:
```

After you enter the filename, you are transferred to Perfect Speller's Selection Menu, which presents the various options available to you with Perfect Speller. Note that in the tutorial these options were completely bypassed by the CHECK SPELLING command (which is equivalent to option "G—Start checking the spelling now.")
A—ADD A NEW DICTIONARY
   Select this option when you wish to create a new dictionary, either from scratch
or by significantly altering the existing dictionary, "DICTNARY.SPL" (see
Chapter V).

B—CHANGE BACKUP EXTENSION NAME
   It is possible to change the "BAK" filename extension of the backup file that
Perfect Speller creates before marking the spelling errors in your document. This
can be done when necessary to avoid confusing the backup with other existing
files that possess the same file extension.

D—SELECT DICTIONARY
   If you have created other dictionaries besides DICTNARY.SPL (or have pur-
chased any of the specialized dictionaries), these can be selected using this option.
If you use this option from the DOS* command line, you should follow it with the
filename of the dictionary you wish to use. If you select this option from the
MENU, then you will be prompted for the filename of the dictionary.

*DOS stands for Disk Operating System (i.e., CP/M, MSDOS, CP/M 86, etc.)
L—LIST WORDS TO TERMINAL

This option causes Perfect Speller to quickly scan a document for unknown words, afterwards listing them to your terminal in alphabetical order. Your document is not marked, and no backup file is created. You are not questioned or allowed to change or alter mistakes. This option is often used in conjunction with option 'O' (see below).

This option can be selected to perform a very quick scan over short documents, or for doing quick dictionary lookups in general. For example, from DOS, you might have a short note which you wish to quickly check for misspellings. You anticipate a few unrecognized words, but most of them are likely to be proper names which can be ignored anyway. Your DOS terminal interaction could look something like this:

```
A> ps -l note.mss
Allentown
McCaulley
processor
Westwood
```

As you can see, if the 'L' option is selected, Perfect Speller simply lists the unrecognized words out to your terminal, but does no further processing. You will have to activate Perfect Writer to correct this single misspelled word found above (processor), but remembering one or a few such words is relatively easy.
Another use of the 'L' option is to use Perfect Speller as a quick on-line dictionary lookup program. You can simply select the console as the input file to Perfect Speller, and type in your word list of questionable words. Perfect Speller will list those words which are not recognized, thusly:

Note: The CP/M operating system treats 'Control ----- Z' as the end of file indicator.

Whenever the 'L' option is selected, Perfect Speller suppresses its header line and all questions. This option, in conjunction with the redirected I/O [input/output] discussed below [option 'O'], is intended for the programmer or others who wish to use Perfect Speller as a software tool as well as part of a word processing system.
M—CHANGE MARKER CHARACTER

When during scanning, you mark misspelled words for later correction, Perfect Speller flags each word with a ‘tilde-uparrow-S’ (\^S). This is a specially coded character that cannot be accidentally entered from the keyboard (thus disallowing inadvertent marking of your document). It is possible, using this option, to change this marker to any character you wish. Simply select "M" and supply the character when Perfect Speller asks you for it. When used with Perfect Writer this option is removed.

N—NO BACKUP

As was mentioned previously, Perfect Speller, before marking your document, always makes a backup of the document, tagged with the file extension "BAK." Normally this backup is saved until the entire spelling session has been completed, to guard against accidental losses of your original material. This option causes the backup file to be erased immediately after the marked file has been created, thus saving you potentially vital disk space for other computer functions.

Whenever Perfect Speller is called directly from within the Perfect Writer editor (and not from the menu or DOS), this option is automatically selected for you, since it is assumed that you will return immediately to the editor to correct your document and will have no need for a backup version with (possibly) misspelled words.
O—PRINT OUTPUT TO FILE

This option instructs Perfect Speller to send the entire output of a spelling session—everything which would have normally been typed to your terminal—to a disk file.

This feature should only be used with the 'L' option, which, as you may recall, sends the entire list of unrecognized words to your terminal. If you combine the two options, Perfect Speller will place this list of misspelled words into a text file for later reference. If you use the 'O' option without the 'L' option, the questions Perfect Speller normally asks during its word disposition phase would be sent to the disk file, leaving you with a running program requesting terminal input from you but without your knowing what it wants.

This feature of Perfect Speller is best characterized as an "advanced" function which should be used only when you have sufficient experience with Perfect Speller in particular and your operating system in general.4

4 For those familiar with the UNIX operating system, this feature is simply redirected output, and the syntax when used directly from CP/M is similar to that on UNIX:

```
A> ps -l letter.mss > outfile
```

Redirected input is also allowed, but its utility is questionable. Its syntax is identical to that of the redirected output, except that the input filename is prefixed with a '<' character.
ACCESSING PERFECT SPELLER FROM DOS

Options that you select from the Perfect Speller are automatically displayed in the menu Echo Line.

As in Perfect Writer, these symbols represent the command form that can be given directly from the operating system, thus circumventing the menu altogether. The following examples show various commands to Perfect Speller that might be given:

1. Check the spelling of "thisfile.mss"

   A> ps thisfile.mss

2. Check the spelling of "thisfile.mss" using the dictionary "LAWDICT.SPL"

   A> ps -d lawdict.spl thisfile.mss
3. Check the spelling of "thisfile.mss" using LAWDICT.SPL (option 'D'), listing the misspelled words to the screen (option 'L').

```
A>ps -l -d lawdict.spl thisfile.mss
```

4. Write the misspelled words in "thisfile.mss" to a file called "errors.mss":

```
A>ps -l thisfile.mss >errors
```

**Cancel**

You may cancel Perfect Speller's processing at any time and return to the system by typing:

```
CTRL + C
```
Chapter V

CUSTOMIZING PERFECT SPELLER

Creating new dictionaries

To meet their particular needs, most users can simply extend the supplied dictionary file DICTNARY.SPL through routine operation of Perfect Speller as previously discussed. Nevertheless, if you want to create your own dictionary from scratch, you can do so with Perfect Speller. This chapter discusses the procedure.

When creating a new dictionary, Perfect Speller utilizes an intermediate file called "ADDDICT.SPL," the purpose of which is to collect new words prior to their inclusion in the new dictionary. ADDDICT.SPL is automatically created and maintained by the Perfect Writer text editing system. Whenever you want to create new dictionaries, you must first create an ADDDICT.SPL file containing your own words. The following two tutorials demonstrate how to do this.

Another main factor to be considered in creating a new dictionary is size. If a dictionary is too large, it will either not fit into your machine memory at all, or it will not leave enough room for Perfect Speller to keep its alphabetized list of misspelled words. On the other hand, a dictionary that is too small will yield poor accuracy. Perfect Speller was designed to work on a 56K or larger computer. The optimal size of DICTNARY.SPL has been found to be 29,952 bytes.

Although you need not, it is recommended that you follow this standard size in creating new dictionaries. Whatever dictionary size you choose (in bytes), it must be a multiple of 256 and cannot be larger than 32,767.

Following are two procedures for creating a new dictionary. The first, and recommended, procedure operates by extending the existing DICTNARY.SPL; the second by creating a completely new dictionary from scratch.
A TUTORIAL

Creating a New Dictionary from "DICTNARY.SPL"

STEP 1:
Using DOS, copy the main dictionary DICTNARY.SPL into a new file, say "NEWDICT.SPL."

A> pip newdict.spl = dictnary.spl

("NEWDICT.SPL" will be the new dictionary.)

STEP 2:
Using Perfect Writer, enter into the file ADDDICT.SPL all of the words that will be added to NEWDICT.SPL. Use either upper or lower case letters, entering the words one to a line, or together on the same line, separating them by a space or any non-alphanumeric character (except a hyphen, which is considered to be part of a word).

STEP 3:
From DOS invoke options 'A' and 'D' of Perfect Speller:

A> ps -a -d newdict.spl
Your new words in ADDDICT.SPL will automatically be added to the new dictionary NEWDICT.SPL. Note that Perfect Speller will delete the file ADDDICT.SPL after adding its contents to the dictionary, so if you wish to save your wordlist, you should have saved another copy of it.

Two dictionaries will exist on the original system disk: NEWDICT.SPL and DICTNARY.SPL. In checking a document Perfect Speller will always use DICTNARY.SPL, unless you select NEWDICT.SPL using option 'D.'

*NOTE: In modifying DICTNARY.SPL in this way, not all of the new words will likely be added, since many of them probably exist in DICTNARY.SPL to begin with. Perfect Speller adds only those words not already present and ignores the rest.

**ALSO, any time DICTNARY.SPL is significantly enlarged, the chance for error in detecting misspelled words in increased (see Chapter III). Restraint should therefore be used in adding words to the main dictionary. In general, the addition of as many as 5,000 words to DICTNARY.SPL will not increase Perfect Speller's error rate beyond acceptable bounds.

---------------End of Tutorial---------------
A TUTORIAL

Creating a New Dictionary

STEP 1:
Decide the size of the new dictionary in bytes. It must be a multiple of 256, and must not exceed 32,767.

STEP 2:
Create the file ADDDICT.SPL containing ALL of the words that will make up the new dictionary. These words can be entered either one to a line, or one after the other on the same line, separated by a space or any non-alphanumeric character (except a hyphen). Both lower and upper case letters are acceptable.

STEP 3:
Invoke the ‘A’ option of the Perfect Speller menu, following it with the length the dictionary will be. The menu Echo Line will reflect your selection along with the length you specify. For example:

```
A>ps -a 29952 -d newdict.spl
```

(In this example, you are selecting a different dictionary than the default DICTNARY.SPL.)

STEP 4:
Perfect Speller will automatically create a new dictionary file NEWDICT.SPL and encode the words from ADDDICT.SPL into it. The original dictionary file DICTNARY.SPL remains unchanged, and ADDDICT.SPL will be deleted as usual.

---End of Tutorial---
Modifying the Prefix/Suffix Table

The file holding the Prefix and Suffix Table used by Perfect Speller is called "AFFIXTAB.SPL." You may add or delete prefixes or suffixes from AFFIXTAB.SPL to customize Perfect Speller for your particular spelling needs. For example, you may prefer the British spellings of words instead of the American (e.g., *civilised* instead of *civilized*). To inspect and modify AFFIXTAB.SPL, call the file into Perfect Writer's editing mode. As you will see, AFFIXTAB.SPL is simply a list of prefixes and suffixes one per line. The prefixes are listed first in the file followed by the suffixes. It is possible to add about 40 suffixes and 20 prefixes to this list if you wish, more if you delete some. Use lower case letters only, except for "C" as mentioned below. Order is not important, except that longer prefixes must follow shorter prefixes which contain them; e.g., *under* must follow *un*.

Note that suffixes are represented as "- characters deleted + characters added," so that *mercy* becomes *merciless* via the application of the suffix "-y +iless." An uppercase "C" indicates a final consonant, so that the rule "double the final consonant and add 'er'" is encoded as +C+er. Perfect Speller performs limited error checking when reading AFFIXTAB.SPL, so you should be careful if you modify it.

To cause Perfect Speller to accept British spellings, you may add suffixes such as +re, -or+our, and +ise.
Appendix A

INTRODUCTION

Introduction

Most personal computer software available today is 'machine dependent,' which means it will operate only on one type or model of computer. In creating Perfect Writer the intent has been to fashion a software tool that will function equally well on any computer.

What this design capability means to you is that you are free to choose whatever computer you like and still be assured that the very finest software is still available to you. As well, should it happen that in the future you wish to change any component of your computer hardware, you need not worry about having to change software as well. Perfect Writer will adapt quickly and easily to the new machine requirements.

'Configuring' Perfect Writer

Perfect Writer is so adaptable because it contains two internal programs that allow it to be 'configured' to any computer or printer that you may be using. Such configuration takes place in two stages:

1. Configuring Perfect Writer to your computer display console (or terminal). This is performed using a program file called 'PWCONFIG.COM' (which stands for Perfect Writer Configuration).

2. Configuring Perfect Writer to your Printer. This is performed using a file called 'PFCONFIG.COM' (which stands for Perfect Formatter Configuration).

These programs, by asking you a series of questions about the capabilities and specifications of your computer and printer, inform Perfect Writer of all the things it needs to know—the arrangement of your computer's keyboard, its screen size, the speed of its processor, your printer's print wheel, its spacing capabilities, etc. When finished Perfect Writer 'knows' exactly what kind of computer and printer you are using and can function at the full limit of its power and flexibility.
Terminal 'Pre-Configuration'

Such system 'Configuration' must be performed before Perfect Writer will function with ANY computer terminal or printer. At Perfect Software we have already 'pre-configured' Perfect Writer for numerous popular computer terminals.¹

It is therefore quite possible that your version of Perfect Writer has come to you already pre-configured for your computer terminal. If you have purchased a computer that is sold together with Perfect Writer, or it you have specifically requested your dealer to supply you with a version of Perfect Writer that is configured to your terminal, you need not be concerned with configuring your terminal because it has already been configured for you.

Default Printer Configuration

Perfect Writer comes pre-configured for a simple, 'no-frills' printer which is known to Perfect Writer as 'vanilla.' The 'vanilla' printer configuration cannot do underlining, boldfacing, proportional spacing, or other special typeface features. However, it will let you immediately begin using your printer with Perfect Writer. Your printer is probably capable of doing more than the 'vanilla' definition will allow it to do. However, try using Perfect Writer with this default configuration before proceeding to describe your printer in more detail to Perfect Writer, using the 'PFCONFIG.COM' program.

¹ The Kaypro, Apple, Vector, Televideo, IBM Personal Computer, Osborne, Heath-Zenith, Columbia, Access Matrix, Seattle Computer, General Electric Intersel, Superbrain, and Northstar Advantage are among some of the versions that have been pre-configured.
Back-Up Disks

Before beginning the configuration programs, you should make a copy or 'back-up' of the original diskettes you received containing Perfect Writer. Perfect Writer comes in two or more diskettes: The Program Diskette(s) containing all of the command programs used to operate the Perfect Writer word processor, and the Lessons Diskette (or Teaching Diskette) containing the text files used to learn and practice Perfect Writer.

Back-up diskettes are important for two reasons: First, if you make a mistake while configuring Perfect Writer, your backup diskette allows you to recover quickly with no damage to your original Perfect Writer diskette. Second, plastic diskettes become worn with use, causing their program information to become faulty and distorted. Should this happen to your only original copy of Perfect Writer, you will have to replace it with a new copy purchased from your dealer. You should NEVER edit with the original diskette received from Perfect Software, but only with working copies made from the original. Having once made a back-up copy, or 'Working Diskette,' of Perfect Writer, put the original, or 'Master Diskette,' away in some safe place.

Making a Back-up

To make a back-up copy, simply format a new blank diskette, using a 'format' utility program available with your disk operating system. Onto this diskette copy all of the file programs on the Master Diskette, again using an appropriate utility program—e.g., 'copy' or 'pip'.

Once you have made a back-up of the original Perfect Writer diskette you are ready to begin, if necessary, configuring Perfect Writer to your terminal and your printer. The configuration will be performed using the back-up, or Working Diskette.
CONFIGURING PERFECT WRITER TO YOUR TERMINAL

This section of the appendix is designed to lead you through the routine of configuring Perfect Writer to whatever computer terminal and printer you may be using. It assumes that Perfect Writer is NOT pre-configured to your terminal, and is not pre-configured adequately to your printer. For the most part it assumes little or no experience on your part with computers and computer software, although in places the terminology may become somewhat technical (unavoidably). In nearly all cases, however, you will be able to perform the routines in this section easily and quickly by simply following the instructions presented in the next few pages.

The whole point of terminal configuration is to supply information about your computer terminal or console which Perfect Writer must know to function properly. This is done using the program 'PWCONFIG.COM' which asks you a series of questions, some of which can be answered simply 'y' for 'yes' or 'n' for 'no' and some which require that you supply one or more characters of information. The 'PWCONFIG' program compiles your answers into a file called the 'pw.swp' file (or simply 'swap file'). Following configuration the 'pw.swp' file will be placed on your working diskette, where it MUST ALWAYS BE PRESENT, since Perfect Writer will need to continually access this file for the information it needs to operate on your terminal.

Once terminal configuration has been completed and the 'pw.swp' file created, the 'PWCONFIG' file is no longer needed and can be deleted from your working diskette. (It should, however, remain on your master diskette.)

Thus, terminal configuration is really a process of building the special 'pw.swp' file which will hold all of the information about your computer. (Note: If your version of Perfect Writer ALREADY has a 'pw.swp' file, it has already been configured and you thus need to proceed no further.)
STEP ONE

Create a Diskette for Building 'PW.SWP' File

At this time format two new blank diskettes, using the format utility available with your disk operating system. Onto one of these blank diskettes copy the following programs from your Working Diskette:

PWCONFIG.COM
WRTBIND.COM
PW.SYM
PWBIND.COM

Note: If you have only two disk drives on your computer, you will have to first transfer the 'copy' or 'pip' utility itself to your Working Diskette. Then with the Working Diskette in Drive A, and the first blank formatted diskette in Drive B, you can copy the programs above.

The files on this new diskette will serve no other purpose than to build the 'pw.swp' file. When the process has been completed the disk can be erased and used for another purpose.
STEP TWO
Call up 'PWCONFIG'

With this diskette now in drive B and holding the files listed above, call up the 'PWCONFIG' program by typing:

A PWCONFIG (followed by a carriage return)

The 'PWCONFIG' Program

The 'PWCONFIG' program appears on the screen, welcoming you to the process of creating the 'pw.swp' file which will configure Perfect Writer to your terminal. It recommends that the 'swap' file, once created, should occupy the first file position on your working diskette, in order to reduce 'seek time.' As we mentioned, the 'pw.swp' file must be constantly accessed by Perfect Writer during editing. Therefore, it will be convenient if it is always the first file on the disk, so that Perfect Writer does not have to search the entire disk each time it uses the swap file.

Also, 'PWCONFIG' reminds you that you should not be attempting to configure Perfect Writer using your Master Diskette!
Appendix A  Installation  291

STEP THREE
Building the 'PW.SWP' File

The second screen of the configuration program presents you with the following 'menu':

1—Read definitions from an existing swap file
2—Define Terminal characteristics
3—Define I/O Port characteristics
4—Define swap file and misc.
5—Edit Definitions
6—Test terminal and port definitions
7—Install definitions
8—Exit to operating system

These selections represent the options that are available to you in building the 'pw.swp' file.

Option 1: Read Existing Swap File

The first selection allows you to access an existing swap file on another diskette. This option is provided in the event that you wish to alter some of the definitions of this existing 'pw.swp' file, in order to enhance it, or create a second file from it. The procedure is straightforward: Type '1' followed by a 'carriage return' (or Enter Key). 'PWCONFIG' asks where the 'swap file' is located (its disk drive). After supplying this information you select option '5' of the main menu, which allows you to edit any of the terminal definitions held in the existing swap file.
Option 2: Define Terminal Characteristics

You should begin with option 2 if your Perfect Writer has not previously been configured, and no ‘pw.swp’ file yet exists. Selecting this option causes ‘PWCONFIG’ to present the following display:

Select a terminal type:

1  Create New Type
2  Heath H19
3  Televideo 912, 920
4  Soroc IQ120
5  Lear-Siegler ADM-3A
6  Lear-Siegler ADM-31
7  Perkin-Elmer Bantam 550
8  Perkin-Elmer Fox 1100
9  D.E.C. VT-52 and VT-100
10 HDS Concept 100
11 Beehive 150
12 Hazeltine 1500
13 Intertec Superbrain
14 Processor Technology SOL
15 Scion Microangelo
16 Teleray 1061
17 Hewlett Packard 2621A
18 Hewlett Packard 2645
19 Xitex SCT-100
20 TRS-80 II with P&T CP/M
21 TRS-80 II with Lifeboat CP/M
22 Apple + Z80 + 80 column + lowercase
23 Osborne 1
24 Xerox 820

Terminals Perfect Writer Knows About

This display lists all of the computers that Perfect Writer is familiar with. If your computer is listed, you need only select it by typing the appropriate number followed by a carriage return. ‘PWCONFIG’ then returns you to the first menu, ready to continue with the configuration. We should mention that numerous computer terminals function similarly to one or more of those listed above. For instance, many terminals are like the ‘Lear-Siegler ADM-3A,’ so if you are not sure about yours, you might try this one.

Defining A New Terminal

If your terminal is not listed as one Perfect Writer knows about, you will need to select the ‘Create a terminal type’ option. ‘PWCONFIG’ will ask you a dozen or more questions about the operation of your terminal. Unavoidably these questions are detailed and technical and use terms that you may not be familiar with. The answers to these questions can usually be found in your computer manual. If you are unable to answer these questions satisfactorily, it will probably be best to seek the help of a technician familiar with your computer and the disk operating system it uses.
QUESTIONS FOR DEFINING A NEW TERMINAL

1. Number of rows on your terminal? {16 to 60}

2. Number of columns on your terminal? {64 to 132}

3. Do you wish to enter the special terminal command codes in decimal, hex, or octal? {currently hex}

4. Does your terminal require a special initialization string to be sent to it at the beginning of the editing session?
   If 'yes,' enter this string in hex code.

5. Does your terminal require a special deinitialization string be sent to it at the end of the editing session?
   If 'yes,' enter this string in hex code.

6. Does your terminal have a command to clear the entire screen, leaving the cursor at 'home' (the upper left corner)?
   If 'yes,' enter the hex code designating this command.

7. Does your terminal have a special command to clear from the current cursor position to the end of the line?
   If 'yes,' enter the hex code designating this command.

8. Does your terminal have a special command to clear from the current cursor position to the end of the screen?
   If 'yes,' enter the hex code designating this command.

9. Does your terminal require any special characters to initiate a cursor positioning command? {Most terminals do.}
   If yes, enter the hex code designating these characters.

10. Is the row or column to be sent first? {R or C}
11. Are the row and column codes sent in ASCII or Binary? {A or B}

12. Should the row and column numbers be complemented before sending?

13. Some terminals require that a bias be added to the row and column numbers. Usually this is 32 for the row and the column. Enter '0' (zero) if none is required.

   Row bias? (in decimal)
   Column bias? (in decimal)

14. Does your terminal require any special characters to separate the row code and the column code in a cursor positioning command?
   If 'yes,' enter the hex code designating these characters.

15. Does your terminal require any special characters to terminate the cursor positioning command?
   If 'yes,' enter the hex code designating these characters.

16. Does your terminal require any padding or delays to execute any of the special functions?
   I. Padding can be done either by extra characters or by a delay loop.
   A. Pad with characters?
      If 'yes,'
      i. What is the code for the pad characters? {usually 0H, in hex; default = 0H}
      ii. How many padding characters should be sent after a cursor positioning command?
         {default = 0}
17. Does your terminal respond to the standard ASCII bell character, Control---G (07H)?
   If 'no,' what character should be sent to ring a bell or otherwise alert the operator?
   Enter the hex code designating the character.
   **Note:** Answer 'y' for yes if your terminal does not have a bell.

To give you an idea of how these questions might be answered, we furnish the following answers for a Radio Shack TRS-80 Model II, using Pickles and Trout CP/M:

### ANSWERS TO TERMINAL DEFINITION QUESTIONS

For: Radio Shack TRS-80 Model II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Hex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>N {No}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>N {No}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Y {Yes} CH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Y {Yes} 1H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Y {Yes} 2H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Y {Yes} 1BH 59H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>row {R}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>binary {B}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>N {No}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>32, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>N {No}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>N {No}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>N {No}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>Y {Yes}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In answering the terminal definition questions, you need only type a 'y' for 'yes' and an 'n' for 'no,' followed by a carriage return. If you make a typing mistake, continue on without attempting to correct it. Changes and corrections should be made using option '5' of the main 'PWCONFIG' menu which allows you to 'Edit definitions'.

When you have finished answering the Terminal Definition questions, 'PWCONFIG' returns you to its main menu, ready to select the next option.
Option 3: Defining I/O Port Characteristics

This selection is used to specify the input/output ports to be used by Perfect Writer. Input/output ports are the hardware inlets and outlets that permit data to flow into and out of your computer, including the interfaces connecting the printer, the keyboard, and the console screen to your computer. Normally these will be defined and governed by your disk operating system—e.g. your CP/M BIOS (Basic Input Output System).

IF YOU ARE RUNNING CP/M, IBM DOS or MSDOS AS YOUR BASIC OPERATING SYSTEM, YOU MAY SKIP THIS OPTION ENTIRELY. 'PWCONFIG' will assume the correct port definitions that will allow your computer to function properly.

Option 4: Define Swap File and Misc.

Option 4 of the main 'PWCONFIG' menu allows you to specify your individual preferences regarding several aspects of Perfect Writer's mode of operation. If you do not care to specify preferences, 'PWCONFIG' will supply what has proven to be adequate default settings for each. To accept the default setting for any of these questions, simply answer by hitting a carriage return (or Enter Key). If you trust 'PWCONFIG' to take care of everything, you may skip this option altogether and the default settings will be supplied automatically.

• Size of Swap File

The first question under option 4 concerns the size of the 'Swap File.' Perfect Writer's "virtual memory" capability, which allows you to write and edit extremely large documents, is made possible by a unique programming feature called the 'Swap File.' This is simply storage space on disk where Perfect Writer places parts of your document which you are not currently editing. The 'Swap File' will be part of, and held within, the 'pw.swp' file which 'PWCONFIG' will eventually create.

The size of the swap file is important because it limits the total amount of document text that you can be editing at one time. A workable minimum is about 24K bytes, while the maximum size the swap file can be is 248K bytes. The default value of the swap file is 64K bytes, which will let you edit a document roughly 64 pages in size.
• Position of Cursor

The second question concerns the line on which the cursor will be displayed following any change or redisplay of the screen, such as is produced by the VIEW NEXT SCREEN, VIEW PREVIOUS SCREEN, or REDISPLAY SCREEN commands. The default setting is just above the center of the screen, at line 10.

• Tab and Margin Settings

The third, fourth, and fifth questions concern the values for tab spacing and the left and right text margins, AS THESE ARE DISPLAYED ON THE CONSOLE SCREEN.²

The default tab setting is eight column intervals. That is, the first tab is set at column 8, the second at column 16, the third at 24, etc.

The right screen margin, or ‘Fill Column’ as it is sometimes called, is set initially at column 65. This will be the last column on the screen in which characters will be allowed to appear. As you type, Perfect Writer will automatically ‘wrap’ or shift words to the next line as they extend beyond this column setting on the screen. Perfect Writer does not attempt to break or hyphenate words. Rather, it displays as many whole words as possible on a line before ‘wrapping’ text to the next line. Thus, whatever setting you give as a ‘Fill Column’ represents nothing more than the ‘average’ number of characters that will eventually be displayed on a single line.

Related to the Fill Column is the ‘indent’ column, which is essentially the Left screen margin. (This is NOT the distance which paragraphs will be ‘indented’ on printer output, which is determined during Printer Configuration.) The indent column is the first column on the screen in which text can appear. The initial default is 0 (zero), which causes text to be displayed beginning at the leftmost column on the screen.
• When to Swap

The sixth question concerns the 'swap delay count.' When you are not working at the keyboard, Perfect Writer will take the opportunity to do its internal 'housekeeping chores,' such as exchanging unneeded portions of your text to and from the swap file. The delay count tells Perfect Writer how long to wait after you have stopped working before proceeding with its own internal chores. The delay count is initially set at four seconds. This is achieved by entering a value of 300 during configuration. Doubling or halving that value doubles or halves the delay.

• Speed of Your Computer

Next 'PWCONFIG' asks the 'clock-rate' of your computer. Clock-rate is how fast the microprocessor of your computer works. This is usually specified in megahertz (MHz). Typical clock-rates are two, four, and six megahertz. If you specify a clock-rate that is slower than your computer is capable of, you needlessly slow the operation of the computer down, whereas if you specify a faster clock-rate than the microprocessor is capable of, you may experience editing difficulties (like losing characters from the screen). If you are unsure of your computer's clock-rate, select the default value of 4 MHz.

• Exchanging Character Keys

Finally, 'PWCONFIG' offers you the opportunity to switch the functions of any two pairs of keys or keyboard characters. This feature can be used to overcome many deficiencies in keyboard design and layout. For instance, this feature can be used to swap the key of a character on your keyboard with a command function that you do not have a key for, thus allowing you to convert keys on your keyboard that you might not otherwise use into keys that you need. For example, if your terminal does not have a 'Delete Key' but has a 'Backspace Key,' you can swap the 'Delete Command' [Hex=7F] with the 'Backspace Key' [Hex=08], thereby converting the Backspace key into a Delete Key.
Option 5: Edit Definitions

Option 5 of the 'PWCONFIG' main menu offers the opportunity to change or correct any of the answers you have given in 2 through 4 above. Unless you have made obvious errors during configuration which you must now correct, you should proceed directly to option 6, 'terminal testing.'

Option 6: Test Terminal and Port Definitions

Selecting this option automatically initiates a test of the configuration which you have just completed in steps 2 through 4.

The test should clear the screen and print columns of asterisks, '*', first along the left and right edges from the bottom up, and then along the top and bottom edges of the screen, beginning at the left and ending on the right.

The words 'This should remain' and 'This should go away' will appear on the screen near the top, except that the latter should be erased almost immediately.

The screen display should look like this:

```
* •••••• ¥¥¥¥¥¥¥¥¥.¥¥¥¥ •• ¥¥ ••••••••••••

This should remain.  This should go away.

The screen should be ringed with '*' characters.  The phrase 'This should remain' and this description should be the only other characters displayed.

Does this look right?
```

If the asterisks do not properly ring the screen, either the cursor positioning sequences were performed improperly, or the size of the screen was not specified correctly.
If the text "This should go away" remains on the screen, the 'Clear to end of line' function is probably not working. If any characters are missing, or if there are additional random characters, the 'padding' might be wrong.

If the terminal test rolls the screen up one line, try reducing the number of columns by one (use Option 5 to make this change) and rerunning the test. If the test now works you can restore the number of columns to its previous value, and Perfect Writer should work.

Option 7: Install Definitions

You must select option 7 to complete configuration. 'PWCONFIG' will ask which drive you wish to have the swap file created on. Indicate the current drive by hitting a carriage return, <CR>.

'PWCONFIG' responds by asking permission to create a swap file of whatever size you specified during configuration. This takes but a few seconds. When it is finished, 'PWCONFIG' returns you to the Main menu.
Option 8: Exit to Operating System

Select option 8 to exit to your operating system. 'PWCONFIG' has successfully created the 'pw.swp' file, and you are now ready to run the 'Bindings Program', which will complete the configuration of your computer terminal.

STEP FOUR
Running the Bindings Program

The purpose of the Bindings Program (filename 'wrtbind.com') is to 'bind' the character keys of your terminal to the command functions employed by Perfect Writer, writing the bindings themselves into the newly created 'pw.swp' file.

To run the bindings program make sure that the files 'pw.sym' and 'pw.swp' are on the same disk as 'wrtbind.com' (they should all now be present on your 'pw.swp' building disk). Type:

\[ B>wrtbind <\text{carriage return}> \]

'Wrtbind.com' begins 'updating' the newly created 'pw.swp' file, in the process writing two new files: FUNCTS.TXT [a table of binding-to-key matches], and FUNCTS.DSC [a table of descriptions of each of the available functions].\(^3\)

\(^3\) These files are used when altering the bindings of command keys. For a discussion of how to alter any or all of Perfect Writer's command keys to suit your personal preference, see Appendix C.
STEP FIVE
Transferring the 'PW.SWP' File

Following 'wrtbind', the 'pw.swp' file is complete and ready to be transferred to a Working Diskette. As was mentioned earlier, the 'pw.swp' file should occupy the first position on any Working Diskette in order to minimize Perfect Writer's "seek time" for this important file. Using a system utility (e.g. 'pip' or 'copy') transfer the 'pw.swp' file to the second blank diskette which you formatted at the start of the configuration procedure.

After the 'pw.swp' file is in first file position on this new diskette, the remaining Perfect Writer system files can be copied from the original Working Diskette that was created from the Master Diskette. The files on your 'second' Working Diskette should now be:

```
pw.swp
menu.com
pw.com
pf.com
pp.com
pf.dat
pw.hlp
```

'pw.swp' is the first file on the diskette

If your diskette will not hold all of these files, then we recommend putting the 'pw.swp' file on a separate 'files' diskette (to be used in drive A) and all the other programs on a separate 'edit' diskette (to be used in drive B).

This completes terminal configuration. You are now ready to use Perfect Writer. The only task remaining is to specify your printer. However, we recommend using the simple pre-defined printer supplied with Perfect Writer for the first few documents you print. After you have used the printer with the predefined 'vanilla' printer definition you are ready to configure Perfect Writer for your printer.
CONFIGURING PERFECT WRITER TO YOUR PRINTER

As we mentioned earlier, Perfect Writer comes pre-configured for a simple 'vanilla' printer. 'Vanilla' is not an actual machine printer, but a definition which causes Perfect Writer to believe it is dealing with a printer of very simple capabilities, one which cannot do boldfacing, italicizing, proportional spacing, or even underlining. Your printer may do more than the 'vanilla' configuration describes. However, because it presents such a simple, common definition of what a printer should be able to do, 'vanilla' will work with almost any printer available on the market today.

Therefore, regardless of the printer you are using, you should, with 'vanilla,' be able to begin generating simple, yet clean, printed output by simply connecting your printer to your terminal at the proper interface, turning the printer on, and following Perfect Writer's print command procedures as described in the Perfect Writer Manual.
Testing for ‘Vanilla’

1. As a simple test of whether your printer is correctly configured to ‘vanilla,’ insert your working diskette into drive A of your computer. When the disk operating prompt appears (A>), type a Control-----P:† [While holding down the Control key, type ‘p’.]

This tells your disk operating system that you wish the printer to output whatever characters are typed next.

2. Type a sentence: ‘The quick brown fox jumped over the lazy dog.’

Were these words output simultaneously at the printer? If they were, it means that your disk operating system is correctly handling output to your printer. If your printer does not print the line then you will need to properly set up your operating system (i.e., CP/M or DOS). If you do not know how to do this consult your computer manual or contact your dealer.

3. Type Control-----P (or ‘Prt Sc’) again to ‘shut-off’ this disk operating print mode.

4. As a further test you may wish to enter Perfect Writer’s menu and ‘Quick Print’ the document ‘test.mss’ which is located on Perfect Writer’s Lessons Diskette. (For the Quick Print command procedure see page 76 of this manual.)

We recommend that even though your printer is capable of performing more sophisticated operations than ‘vanilla’ supports, you should nevertheless use the ‘vanilla’ default printer definition for a time before attempting to define your printer more exactly to Perfect Writer. You will not only be able to study more completely the technical specifications of your printer, but you will have a period of learning about and appreciating the other fine editing capabilities of Perfect Writer.

†For the IBM Personal Computer the command is entered by holding the shift key down and pressing ‘PrtSc’.
PRINTER CONFIGURATION—WHAT IS IT?

What is important to Perfect Writer is not so much the actual, physical printer, as the 'definition' which describes how the printer will operate in any given print situation. All aspects of the printer are part of this definition, including apparently extraneous items, such as the size of the paper it will use and the type of printwheel it has.

A single physical printer can be defined in more than one way. For example, a single printer can be defined to handle various kinds of paper, such as mailing labels, standard sheets, or legal size sheets. Each type of paper will require a different printer definition. As well, one might wish to define a single printer according to the print wheels that it uses. Each print wheel would require a separate printer definition. Should we wish to change print wheels we would only have to specify to Perfect Writer which printer definition it should now use.

Perfect Writer regards each separate definition of a printer as a different 'device.' Thus, a single physical printer, which is defined three different ways, depending on the paper it uses, is regarded by Perfect Writer as three separate devices.

In its print command procedures, Perfect Writer provides the option of selecting the printer 'device.' If we make no choice, Perfect Writer selects the 'device' that has been designated as the 'default printer device'—i.e. the standard printer definition that we use most often. It is possible when printing to choose among a dozen or so possible 'device' definitions for our single printer, and Perfect Writer will use the 'device' definition we specify to print labels, legal sheets, 12 pitch or italic type—whatever.

Thus, the whole point of Printer Configuration is to provide one or more definitions of our physical printer (or printers), which Perfect Writer can use to produce printed output.
The 'PF.DAT' File.

As with Terminal Configuration, Printer Configuration is accomplished using an internal configuration program, called 'PFCONFIG.COM'. Like 'PWCONFIG' which configures your computer terminal, 'PFCONFIG' gathers information regarding your printer and compiles it in a single file that is accessible to Perfect Writer. This file is called 'PF.DAT'.

'PF.DAT' must always be present on your working diskette in order to supply the necessary printer and style specifications for 'Perfect Formatter' and 'Perfect Printer', the two principal print command files of Perfect Writer.\(^1\)

You will also notice that your Perfect Writer diskette already contains a 'PF.DAT' file. As you will see this 'PF.DAT' file holds more than one printer definition. Some of these describe actual printers, some are hypothetical definitions, such as the 'vanilla' definition, which can apply to almost any printer.

In the Printer Configuration procedures that we will now describe, you will not be producing a new 'PF.DAT' file, but simply updating and adding new specifications to the file that already exists.

In performing this configuration we will be using the working diskette previously created during Terminal Configuration, and which holds the two files required for Printer Configuration: 'PFCONFIG.COM' and 'PF.DAT'. (If you are using another system diskette, make sure that these two files are both present.)

---

\(^1\) These files are identified on your diskette as 'pf.com' and 'pp.com' respectively.
STEP ONE
Call Up 'PFCONFIG'

With your working diskette on drive A, call up the 'PFCONFIG' program by typing:

A >pfconfig (followed by a carriage return)

'PFCONFIG' appears on the screen identifying itself as the 'Perfect Format Configuration Program,' and indicating that you are about to begin editing the 'configuration' file (i.e. the 'PF.DAT' file) which is located on the CURRENT diskette. If this is not the particular 'PF.DAT' file that you wish to edit, you should exit and change to the appropriate diskette.

The main menu of the 'PFCONFIG' program presents you with the following options:

1—Define input/output port usage
2—Specify, design, or change printer types
3—Select Perfect Writer default style parameters
4—Edit character width tables
5—Edit character translation tables
6—Exit configuration program and update data file
Enter the number of your selection, followed by a carriage return
In nearly all instances of configuration you will need to select only options 2, 3, and finally 6, consulting as needed the manuals for your computer, your printer, and for Perfect Writer. When configuration is complete you should test your printer configuration by printing the document 'Test.mss' which is located on Perfect Writer's Lessons Diskette.

To select an option of the menu, type the number followed by a carriage return. To 'Escape,' 'Skip,' or 'Cancel' any particular question or procedure type 'Control ----G'. (While holding down the Control key, type 'g'.)

**STEP TWO**
Defining Input/Output Port Usage

The Input and Output ports are the channels by which Perfect Writer passes and receives information to and from the 'outside world.' If you are using a single printer and are running CP/M or MSDOS as your operating system **YOU WILL WANT TO IGNORE THIS OPTION ENTIRELY.** Input/Output ports have been pre-defined for you, and should function correctly under control of your disk operating system.†

† The I/O port configurations available here are extremely comprehensive and can be made to adapt literally any kind of printer, or printers, to Perfect Writer. As such they are highly specialized and useful only if you or your technician are customizing your computer configuration, by connecting, for example, a particularly complex or sophisticated printer, or perhaps multiple physical printers. In all other ordinary circumstances you will probably never have to use these specialized I/O port definitions.
STEP THREE
Selecting Your Printer

Selecting Option 2 of PFCONFIG's Main Menu causes a second menu to be displayed to the screen, offering several options related to defining your printer. This menu appears as follows:

Printer Type Definition Menu
1—List of currently defined printer types
2—Define a new printer type
3—Update existing printer definition
4—Delete a printer definition
5—Select the default printer type
6—Return to main menu

Enter the number of your selection, followed by a carriage return.
PRINTER DEFINITION MENU

Option 1: Printers that Perfect Writer Knows About

The first option on this menu allows you to view the printers that Perfect Writer knows about. If your printer is listed here, you need only enter its name as the 'default' printer using Option '5' of this menu. Once you enter this name you are finished with printer configuration and may go directly to Option 5 below. In most instances, this is all you will have to do.

The list of printers that have been pre-defined for Perfect Writer are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Printer</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vanilla</td>
<td>This is the simplest generic printer which Perfect Writer will operate with. It cannot boldface, italicize, underline, backspace, or perform any other complex operations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plain</td>
<td>This is a variation of 'vanilla'. It assumes that your printer can BACK UP by using a bare carriage return. For printers that can back up using the backspace character, this device definition can be edited (using Option 3 below) to add or substitute the backspace capability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File</td>
<td>The 'File' device comes set up for a standard system text file. It is 80 columns wide by 66 lines (11 inches) high.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Console</td>
<td>This device definition describes a computer terminal to Perfect Writer, and is used for displaying output to the screen prior to printing. (Selecting Option '-c' on the Format Option Menu causes Perfect Writer to use this device definition.) This device describes a CRT terminal 80 columns wide by 24 lines high. Print widths are assumed to be 10 characters per inch and 6 lines per inch respectively. Paper size is defined to be 4 by 10 'inches' regardless of the physical screen size.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Epson**

This device definition describes the Epson MX-80 without the Graftrax Plus option. This printer can microfeed, but it cannot microspace. Therefore, it can do super- and subscripts well, but not microspace justification. This definition will not work for the Epson Graftrax plus.

Most versions of the MX-80 come equipped with a paper tear bar. The initial paper offset defined for this device lines the top of the paper form up with this tear bar. However, the offset will perhaps be different if you are using tractor feed paper.

**IDS460**

This device definition describes the Integral Data Systems 460 and 465 printers. These printers are capable of proportional spaced printing and microspace justification. However, we do not recommend using these options because Perfect Writer will cause the print head to make a separate pass for each word (and a lot of noise).

**Cent737**

This device is used with the Centronics 737 printer set up for 10 pitch.

**CentPS**

This device describes the Centronics 737 with proportional spaced printing and microspace justification.

**Diablo10, Diablo12, & DiabloPS**

These device descriptions cover the Diablo 1610, 1620, 1640, 1650, 630, equivalent Xerox models, and any other printers compatible with one of these. Because these models can both microfeed and microspace, super- and subscripts work well, as do microspace justification and proportional typewheel printing. Text will be underscored with solid lines. Bidirectional printing will be performed.

These printers are capable of 10 pitch, 12 pitch, and proportional spaced printing. Select the 'Diablo10' device for 10 pitch, 'Diablo12' for 12 pitch, and 'DiabloPS' for proportional space typewheels.
**Spin10, Spin12, & Spin PS**

These devices cover the Nippon Electric Companies (NEC) 5510 and 5520 printers. These models can both microfeed and microspace. Therefore, super- and subscripts work well, as do microspace justification and proportional typewheel printing. Text will be underscored with solid lines. Bidirectional printing is supported.

These printers are capable of 10 pitch, 12 pitch and proportional printing. The 'Spin10' is for 10 pitch, 'Spin12' for 12 pitch. The proportional thimble for these printers has a non-ASCII arrangement of characters and requires the use of a translation table.

The 'pitch switch' on the front panel of the printer must be set appropriately for 10 pitch and 12 pitch printing.
Option 2: Define and Add a New Printer Type to the Printer List

Only if either your printer is not listed in Option 1 of the above menu, or you do not wish to select one of the standard device definitions such as 'Vanilla' or 'Plain,' will you select this second option to define your own printer to Perfect Writer.

Since the 'PF.DAT' file is capable of holding only 16 printer definitions at one time, you may have to delete one or more existing definitions (using Option 4 of the above Menu) before beginning your new definition. Otherwise, the definition you create will not be saved to the 'PF.DAT' file.

The configuration program now begins asking you questions regarding the new printer definition. Some of these questions can be answered by typing 'y' or 'n,' while some require that you supply one or more characters of information. These latter require that you end your answer with a carriage return to tell 'PFCONFIG' that you have finished entering the information.
QUESTIONS FOR DEFINING A NEW PRINTER

Name of Printer to be defined:

1. What is the width of paper? [1 inch = 2,540 micas; 8½ inches = 21,590 micas] Width in micas:

2. What is the height of paper? [1 inch = 2,540 micas; 11 inches = 27,940 micas] Height in micas:

3. What is the standard character width? (i.e. on a fixed-width device, the width of any character; on a proportionally-spaced device, this is the average width Perfect Writer will use when distances are specified in characters; capital ‘O’ is a good character to judge in estimating this). [10 characters per inch: 254 micas; 12 characters per inch: 212 micas; 16.5 characters per inch: 154 micas] Width in micas:

4. What is the height of a single-spaced line? [6 lines per inch: 423 micas; 8 lines per inch: 317 micas] Height in micas:

5. What is the smallest horizontal movement the printer can make (i.e., the horizontal ‘resolution’)? [10 pitch: 254 micas; 12 pitch: 212 micas; 16.5 pitch: 154 micas; 1/20 inch microspacing: 21 micas] Width in micas:

6. What is the smallest vertical movement the printer can make (i.e., the vertical ‘resolution’)? [6 lines per inch: 423 micas; 8 lines per inch: 317 micas; 1/48 inch microspacing: 53 micas] Height in micas:

7. Does your printer have a proportionally spaced font or print-wheel that you intend to use for this device? ['Y' or 'N']:

8. Perfect Formatter requires a table giving the width of each character. These tables are numbered 0 through 4 and are entered with Option 5 in the main menu. Which character width table should be used for this device:
9. Perfect Formatter can produce either online-readable files, or files in a special intermediate format for Perfect Printer. The latter is required for underlining, boldface, super- and sub-scripts, and microspace justification, but the special intermediate file cannot be used by any other program. Generate online-readable output? ['Y' or 'N']:

10. For convenience in tearing off output, Perfect Printer can advance the paper a specified amount past the last page boundary after printing a file. It also assumes the paper has been advanced this distance when printing starts. This can be used to align the perforations with a page cutter or other reference point. Enter 0 to disable this feature. Paper advance distance (in micas):

11. Perfect Printer has special knowledge about certain printers to enable it to do fractional line and character movement. The supported printers are:

1—Plain non-fractional movement printers
2—Diablo 1610, 1620, 1640, 1650, 630
   Nec Spinwriter 5515, 5525
3—Epson MX-80
4—IDS 460 Paper Tiger
5—NEC Spinwriter 5510, 5520
6—Centronics 737

Enter number for your printer:

12. Does the printer backspace when sent an ASCII backspace character (Control----H, 8 decimal)? ['Y' or 'N']

13. Does the printer do a carriage return with no paper advance when sent an ASCII carriage return (Control----M, 13 decimal)? ['Y' or 'N']

14. Does the printer advance the paper to the top of the next page when sent an ASCII form feed (Control----L, 12 decimal)? ['Y' or 'N']
15. Some printers require a synchronization protocol in order not to miss characters. Perfect Printer supports the following protocols:

1—None
2—ETX/ACK (e.g. Diablo 1610, 1620)
3—X-ON/X-OFF (e.g. Diablo 1640, 1650, 630)

Synchronization protocol:

16. Some printers, such as the NEC Spinwriter with proportional print thimbles, require a special translation of the character set; or, you may prefer to have some special characters print as other characters. In these cases a character translation table may be used to produce appropriate output. Use a character translation table? ['Y' or 'N']

If 'Yes' . . . .

17. There are several translation tables available. They may be defined and printed using the Edit Character Translation tables option on the main menu. Some of them come predefined, and you should consult the Perfect Writer manual to determine if any of them may be of use to you. Which translation table should be used:

18. The initialization string is sent to the printer to set various modes, fonts, character pitch, etc. before printing. Initialization string:

19. The reset string is sent to the printer at the end of printing, to turn off the various modes, fonts, etc. that the initialization string turned on, or to perform other desired end-of-printing functions (e.g., extra paper feeding). Reset string:
20. The new line string is sent to the printer to cause a carriage return and a single line feed. Typically this string consists of an ASCII Carriage Return-Line Feed pair, but some printers perform this function on just a Carriage Return or Line Feed alone. To enter a carriage return, type a Control-13, and then the Return key. New line string:

21. If your printer has a special mode or font that can be turned on and off in the middle of a line, does not affect the width of characters, and that you wish to use for text in boldface, then enter the character string that turns it on; otherwise, just type 'Return' to use double printing for boldface. Boldface-on string:

22. Enter the boldface string that turns off the boldface mode. Boldface-off string:

23. If your printer has a special mode or font that can be turned on and off in the middle of a line, does not affect the width of characters, and that you wish to use for text in italics, then enter the character string that turns it on; otherwise, just type Return to use underlining for italics. Italics-on string:

24. Enter the italics string that turns off the italics mode. Italics-off string:

To give you an idea of the possible answers for these printer definition questions, we provide here the answers for our 'Vanilla' printer definition. (If you select option 3 of the 'Printer Definition Menu' you will be asked the name of the printer to update or change. If you enter the name 'vanilla' Perfect Writer will display this printer definition.)
THE 'VANILLA' PRINTER

1—Paper width: 21590 micas
2—Paper height: 27940 micas
3—Standard character width: 254 micas
4—Height of a single-spaced line: 423 micas
5—Smallest horizontal movement: 254 micas
6—Smallest vertical movement: 423 micas
7—Proportionally-spaced font/printwheel? No
9—Generate on-line readable output? No
10—Initial paper offset: 0 micas
11—Special printer code: 1
12—Use Control-H for backspace? No
13—Use Carriage Return [Control-H] for bare carriage return? No
14—Use Form Feed [Control-L] for form feed? No
15—Type of synchronization protocol: 1
16—Translate character tables on output? No
18—Initialization string:
19—Reset string:
20—New line string:
21—Boldface on string:
23—Italics on string:

This 'vanilla' definition can be changed to define other printers. For example, with the modifications below it is possible to define the Brother HR-1 printer.

BROTHER HR-1

Selections to change:
12—Backspace—yes
13—Carriage Return—yes

EPSON MX-80 GRAFTRAX PLUS

Selections to change:
12—Backspace—No
13—Bare Carriage Return—Yes
21—Boldface-on: Escape-E
22—Boldface-off: Escape-F
23—Italics-on: Escape-4
24—Italics-off: Escape-5
All Measurements in Micas

Perfect Writer performs all internal measurements in micas. A mica is a unit of distance equal to 10 microns or 1/100,000 meters. It is a small enough unit that any distance used in formatting can be described accurately. Here are some conversions and measurements:

### Measurements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Measurement</th>
<th>Conversion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 mica</td>
<td>1/2540 inches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 character</td>
<td>254 micas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 line</td>
<td>423 1/3 micas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 inch</td>
<td>2540 micas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/4 inch</td>
<td>1270 micas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 centimeter</td>
<td>1000 micas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pica</td>
<td>423 1/3 micas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 point</td>
<td>35 5/6 micas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Paper</th>
<th>Conversion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8 1/2 inches</td>
<td>21,590 micas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 inches</td>
<td>27,940 micas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 1/4 inches</td>
<td>37,465 micas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mailing labels</th>
<th>Conversion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>30 characters</td>
<td>7620 micas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 lines</td>
<td>2540 micas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Terminal screen size</th>
<th>Conversion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>80 characters</td>
<td>20,320 micas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 lines</td>
<td>10,160 micas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Micas are always positive numbers. However, values greater than 48,000 micas are not allowed. Micas are used for describing paper measurements to Perfect Writer.
Entering Data

You will be required to enter the following types of data while answering the configuration questions:

- Decimal numbers, between 0 and 65535: (Mica values are entered in decimal).

- Hexadecimal numbers between 0 and FF: (These are used primarily in I/O port descriptions). The hex digits A-F may be entered in either upper or lower case.

- Character strings: These are entered by typing the characters themselves, NOT the hex codes which designate them. To enter codes involving Control characters, type 'Control-----Q' first, followed by the characters of the Control code. For example, a 'carriage return' is represented by the Control code '\^M' (Control-----M). To enter this code, type 'Control-----Q', followed by 'Control-----M'.

To enter codes involving Escape characters, simply type Escape followed by the particular code character. For example, to enter the emphasized print mode for the Epson Graftrax Plus, (code: 'Escape-----E'), type the 'Escape' Key followed by an 'E'.
COMMENTS ON PRINTER DEFINITION QUESTIONS

Many of the printer definition questions listed above are straightforward. Several, however, require comment.

1 & 2. Paper Width & Height
These dimensions are crucial to any device definition. For example, a paper height that is improperly specified will cause incorrect page breaks.

3. Standard Character Width
Character width is essentially the 'pitch' of the printer. Printers that can adapt to various pitches will need various device definitions.

4. Height of a Single Spaced Line
This is the vertical size of each line. Most printers print at 6 lines per inch, which is 423 micas.

5. Smallest Horizontal Movement
If your printer is a 'fractional' printer—that is, if it can move horizontally less than 1 character WIDTH—you may want to enter the smallest distance the printer can move (see also Special Printer Code #11 below).

6. Smallest Vertical Movement
If your printer is a 'fractional' printer—that is, if it can move vertically less than one character HEIGHT—you may want to enter the smallest distance the printer can move (see also Special Printer Code #11 below).

7. Proportionally-spaced Font/Printwheel
If your printer can do proportional spacing, and if you have a printer that can use one of the fractional printer codes (see Special Printer Code #11), you may wish to use proportional spacing.
8. **Width Table to Use**
   If you select proportional printing (#7) 'PFCONFIG' will ask you to specify the proper 'width' table to use. The width tables determine the proper widths for the proportionally spaced characters. There are four width tables and the choice depends upon the printer being used. If you are not certain which table your printer best matches, you may have to select them by trial and error, printing test documents to see which table eventually produces the correct proportional spacing.

9. **Generate Online-Readable Output**
   If you wish the device you are defining to display its output ONLY to the screen (and NOT to the printer), answer 'yes' to this selection. This will terminate the printer questions (since all subsequent questions concern only hardcopy printers). Your output to the screen will, of course, not display certain features possible on a printer, such as boldfacing, italicizing, underlining, etc. If you wish to actually print documents in hardcopy, answer 'no' to this question.

10. **Initial Paper Offset**
    This option allows you to line up the top of a paper form with your printer's tear bar. Enter '0' to turn this feature OFF.

11. **Special Printer Code**
    Perfect Writer knows about the 'fractional' movement capabilities of certain classes of printers. If you want to do fractional movement in order to achieve proportional spacing, you must select one of these. If your printer functions similarly to one of these (your printer manual should explicitly indicate this) you may select that printer. If not, you must select the 'Plain, non-fractional' printer.

12. **Use Control-----H for Backspace**
    If your printer backspaces when sent a Control-----H (ASCII 08) then answer 'Yes' here. This allows underlining and boldfacing (Boldfacing with Control-----H is actually a double strike). If your printer has a special boldfacing code, you should enter it in item 21.
13. **Use Control-----M for Bare Carriage Return**
   If your printer uses the standard carriage return code (ASCII 13), then enter 'Yes' here.

14. **Use Control-----L for Form Feed**
   If your printer uses the standard form feed code (ASCII 12) then enter 'yes' here. This will make your printer a little faster since it will not need to type carriage returns to advance the paper to the top of the next page after a page of text has been printed.

15. **Type of Synchronization Protocol**
   Synchronization protocol insures that the printer is not given more material to print than it can handle. The printer, which handles data much more slowly than the computer, signals to the computer when it is ready to receive more data to print. In most computer/printer arrangements on which Perfect Writer will run, synchronization protocol is handled by the disk operating system. Therefore, selection '1' will be the appropriate response for this question. That is, no additional synchronization protocol is needed. In rare cases, additional protocol is provided for, as indicated in selections 2 & 3.

16. **Translate Characters on Output**
   Some printers require character translation because they do not use standard ASCII codes. For example, some Spinwriter printers do not use standard ASCII for their proportional space printwheels.

   Also, this option allows you to print characters that do not appear on the screen. For example, you can replace a key that you rarely use with the control code in a character translation table which represents the character you want to print. On output the character will be printed.

17. **Character Translation Table to Use**
   (See the discussion of the two translation tables available, Step Six below.)
18. Initialization String

Some printers require an initialization string to alert them to perform in a particular fashion. For example, dot matrix printers, which can produce a variety of fonts, require special codes to 'set up' these fonts prior to printing, followed afterwards by a 'Reset string' which 'shuts off' or disables the special font which had been activated.

19. Reset String

(See 'Initialization String')

20. New Line String

Nearly all printers use a 'Control-----M Control-----J' code to advance a new line. Perfect Writer allows the possibility that some printers may use different codes. Enter your particular New Line code here.

21. Boldface-on String

Some printers have a special code for enabling boldface. For example, the Epson Graftrax Plus uses an 'Escape-----E' to activate "emphasized" print. Answering this selection with a carriage return will cause Perfect Writer to boldface by overstriking characters (see #12 above).

22. Boldface-off String

If you use a special code to turn boldface 'on' then you need a code to turn boldface 'off.' For example, the Epson Graftrax Plus uses an 'Escape-----F' to turn its "emphasis" mode off.

23. Italics-on String

Some printers have a code to turn on italics. For example, the Graftrax uses an 'Escape-----4' to turn italics on. Leaving this selection blank will cause Perfect Writer to effect italics by underlining.

24. Italics-off String

If you turn italics on, you must supply a code to turn it off. For example, the Graftrax uses an 'Escape-----5' for "italics off."

When all of these questions have been answered, 'PFCONFIG' returns you to the 'Printer Type Definition Menu,' where you may continue to change, add, or delete printer types, as well as select the default printer to be used by Perfect Writer.
Option 3: Changing an Existing Printer Definition

You may alter any of the device definitions listed in Option 1 of this menu, or which you have created in Option 2. Simply select Option 3 and supply the name of the device definition you wish to change. 'PFCONFIG' will present specifications for the device in a display. You may change any item by selecting its number. When finished exit to the main menu again using a Control-----G.

Option 4: Deleting a Printer Type From the Printer List

The 'PF.DAT' file can hold only sixteen different printer definitions. If you wish to remove an old printer definition to make room for others, select this option and supply the name of the device which you wish to delete. 'PFCONFIG' will present the list of specifications for this device and ask for confirmation. Before you delete any printer definition, make sure that you will never need it. If you are not sure, make a backup copy of the 'PF.DAT' file before making any deletions.
Option 5: Choosing the Default Printer

This option allows you to choose which 'device' shall be used as the 'default' printer device, that is, which device Perfect Writer will automatically select when printing a file. The default printer should be the printer/device that you use most often.

'PFCONFIG' will ask you to name the device to be used for printer output, and the device for console output. Initially, the default devices are 'vanilla' for printer output and 'console' for console output. 'Vanilla' is the 'no frills' 10 pitch printer described earlier, while 'console' is a definition that is used for reviewing the format of a document prior to printing. The document will look clean and appropriately formatted on the screen. However, if you wish to see exactly where page breaks occur in your document, edit the 'console' definition, so that the first 8 questions match the first 8 questions of your printer definition. For example, here is a 'console' definition that will look clean and appropriately formatted on the screen:

```
'CONSOLE'
1—Paper width: 20320 micas
2—Paper height: 10160 micas
3—Standard character width: 254 micas
4—Height of a single-spaced line: 423 micas
5—Smallest horizontal movement: 254 micas
6—Smallest vertical movement: 423 micas
7—Proportionally-spaced font/printwheel? No
9—Generate online-readable output? Yes
```
While here is a second console definition that will show page breaks for 8½ by 11 paper on a 10 pitch printer. (It won't look nice because the 'pages' are now actual size and will be larger than the screen.) Use the pause option to see each page individually.

'CONSOLE2'
1—Paper width: 21590 micas
2—Paper height: 27940 micas
3—Standard character width: 254 micas
4—Height of a single-spaced line: 423 micas
5—Smallest horizontal movement: 254 micas
6—Smallest vertical movement: 423 micas
7—Proportionally-spaced font/printwheel? No
9—Generate online-readable output? Yes

Return to Main Menu
When you have finished with defining, changing, and selecting printer definitions, return to the main 'PFCONFIG' Menu, by selecting Option 6.
STEP FOUR
Select Default Style Parameters

Option 3 of 'PFCONFIG's main menu now asks you several questions regarding the operation of Perfect Writer for which there are no 'correct' answers. When first starting out you will want to use the 'default' settings. However, later on you may decide to alter these style parameters. These questions concern your personal preferences regarding the style parameters that will be used in formatting your documents: parameters governing margins, indentations, tab spacing, line justification, etc. Perfect Writer provides default settings for each of these parameters, and you can accept these default values by simply skipping this section. With the exception of 'End Space Size,' all of the style parameters can be changed during editing for any particular document, using the simple style command procedure described on page 220.
DOCUMENT STYLE PARAMETERS

'PFCONFIG' presents you with a display listing 18 style parameters, showing the default settings for each. To change any particular parameter, select its field number, and enter the new setting. The parameters are:

1. Top Margin
   All margin settings are entered in micas. The top margin is the distance between the top edge of the paper, and the first line of print. The top margin is initially set at 1270 (½ inch).

2. Bottom Margin
   The bottom margin is initially set at 1270 micas (½ inch).

3. Left Margin
   The left margin is initially set at 2032 micas (8 characters).

4. Right Margin
   The right margin is initially set at 2032 micas (8 characters).

5. Headerspacing
   This is the amount of blank space that will be left between the last line of the 'header' and the first line of the 'running text.' This entry is initially set at 1270 micas (½ inch or 3 lines).

6. Footerspacing
   This is the amount of blank space that will be left between the end of the text and the beginning of the 'footer' (pagefooting). This entry is initially set at 1270 micas (½ inch or 3 lines).

7. Linespacing
   Linespacing is the amount of space left between lines in all format 'environments' that do not otherwise specify a particular line setting. This includes such environments as: 'Text,' 'Center,' and 'Verbatim,' but not 'Quotation' and 'Example.' This entry is specified in tenths of a line; initially it is entered as: 10 (1 line).
8. Spread
This is the amount of additional space left between paragraphs. This amount is added to the 'Linespacing' parameter to determine a total space between paragraphs. The entry is initially 423 micas (1 line).

9. Indent
This parameter specifies how far to indent the first lines of paragraphs in QUOTATION and TEXT formats, and how far to indent the 'body' of paragraphs in the UNDENT format. Initially this parameter is set at 2 characters.

10. Tab Spacing
Perfect Writer has semi-variable tabbing, in which tab stops are set automatically a fixed number of columns apart. For example, a tab spacing of '8' tabs will cause tabs to be set at columns 8, 16, 24, etc. ANSI (American National Standards Institute) does not have a standard for this, but recommends an eight columns spacing; this is also the CP/M standard. This entry is initially set at 8 characters.

11. Justify Right Margin
If 'Yes,' the right margin will be 'justified' (aligned evenly) in those formats that 'fill,' such as 'Text,' 'Description,' 'Level.' Two spaces will be left after sentences. If 'No,' the right margin will be left ragged. This parameter is initially 'Yes.'

12. Footnote Placement
(Entered as 'Inline,' 'Bottom,' or 'Endnote.') This entry controls where the text of a footnote will appear. In 'Inline,' the text is enclosed in brackets and appears at the point of reference. If 'bottom,' the text appears at the bottom of the page. If 'endnote,' the text appears at the end of the document (exactly as if a NOTE directive had been used). The parameter is initially: 'bottom.'

13. Superscript Footnote Reference
If 'Yes,' a numeric footnote reference will be printed as a superscript (for Footnote placement values of 'bottom' and 'endnote' only). If 'No' the numeric reference will be enclosed in brackets. This entry is initially 'Yes.'
14. Pad Super- and Subscripts
If 'Yes,' extra (vertical) whitespace is left above superscripts and below subscripts to improve readability. If 'No,' the extra space is not left. This entry is initially 'No.'

15. Four-level Sectioning (Numbering)
If 'Yes,' the CHAPTER and APPENDIX directives are the highest level of sectioning numbering in a document. If 'No,' the SECTION and APPENDIXSECTION directives are the highest. This entry is initially 'Yes.'

16. Above
This parameter determines the amount of vertical space to be left above general text or list formats, e.g. 'Text,' 'Verbatim,' 'Enumerate,' 'Itemize.' It is initially 423 micas (1 line).

17. Below
This parameter determines the amount of vertical space to be left below a general text or list format. It is initially 423 micas (1 line).

18. End Space Size
(Entered in bytes.) Perfect Writer divides available memory into two areas: 'page space' and 'end space.' 'End Space' is used to store table of contents entries, index entries, and end notes. Everything else is stored in 'page space.' In documents that do not use any index entries, end notes, or table of contents entries, the size of the end space can be zero. Some documents, however, may need a great deal of end space. This setting allows you to vary the allocation of end space and page space depending on your needs. This value is initially 1000 bytes for 'End Space.' On a 64K system you can increase this to around 8000 bytes and still have a reasonable amount of 'page' space left over.
STEP FIVE

Edit Character Width Tables

Perfect Writer provides the advanced feature of true proportional spacing. After you select your printer type the proper character width table will be selected for you. However, if you want to modify the selections made you may. The discussion below explains how.

When operating with a proportionally spaced font or printwheel, Perfect Writer must have available to it information concerning the varying widths of the characters in the font, in order to space them correctly, to justify the printed lines, and to provide sufficient space between sentences.

This information is provided to Perfect Writer through FOUR standardized 'character width tables.' When selecting proportionally spaced printing during printer configuration you are asked to select the appropriate character width table to use (Printer Definition Question #8). It is necessary that you acquaint yourself with these tables before attempting to select one during the printer definition procedure.

All of the tables can be modified to suit either your particular printer's printwheels, or more importantly, your own individual preferences. Character widths are relative measurements. What looks handsomely proportioned to one person, looks crowded or sparse to another. For example, upon examining your printed output, you may decide that lowercase 'L's are taking up too much space, whereas a capital 'T' looks too crowded on the page. Using Option 4 of the 'PFCONFIG's main menu, you can access the table you are using and change the width (in micas) of any particular character. You should have really no hesitation in doing this. Begin be comparing the relative widths of the characters, reducing or enlarging this character or that, depending on how it looks in relation to its companions. You will probably have to test your character widths several times with printed output before you get the proportionality that you want.

In specifying character widths in micas, it should be remembered that most printers advance in increments of 1/20 or 1/60 of an inch. The mica values you supply should be in multiples of these.
The character width tables supplied with Perfect Writer are:

**Width Table 0**  This is a 10-pitch FIXED-WIDTH character table, which means that all characters are the same width. This table is provided for those users who wish to build their own customized character width table, by changing characters throughout the font to achieve a 'proportionality' to suit your preferences.

Perfect Writer automatically leaves space at the ends of sentences. This space is equal to the width of the Delete character (Control-----?, ASCII 127). Like all characters in this table, this spacing can be changed.

**Width Table 1**  Table 1 was created especially for the "Bold PS" Spinwriter thimble. If you have a NEC Spinwriter, you will wish to use this table, changing character widths where necessary to customize the table to your particular printwheel.

**Width Table 2**  This table contains the official Diablo proportional-spacing character widths. Again, you may wish to change characters here and there to reflect your printwheel.

**Width Table 3**  This table provides character widths for the Centronics 737 proportional-spaced font.

**Note:** When viewing the character width values of any table, using Option 4, you will be asked to specify the range of characters that you wish to have displayed. The range is entered as an ASCII code, from 32 (space) to 126 (‘~’). Do not enter this entire range at once, or the characters will scroll across the screen so rapidly that they cannot be read. Enter 'short' ranges, one after the other: 32 to 45; 46 to 60; etc.
STEP SIX

Edit Character Translation Tables

Several advanced design printers allow you to modify or change the printwheels or thimbles they use. Perfect Writer has been pre-installed for the standard printwheels. However, you may want to change these. The discussion below explains how you can do this.

In most cases the characters we type at our keyboard will be output correctly at our printer. However, it sometimes happens that characters are not reproduced exactly by our printer. For example, we may type a lowercase 'z' and the printer produces a tilde, '⁻', or some such oddity. This does not mean that our font wheel does not contain a lowercase 'z', only that the characters are perhaps arranged 'differently,' in a way Perfect Writer does not recognize.

Perfect Writer comes supplied with 2 character translation tables, which allows us to adapt printers whose character codes differ from the normal ASCII character set that Perfect Writer uses. Using a translation table, our keyboard characters are automatically translated into the character codes used by the printer.

Also, with a translation table it is possible to have the printer produce characters that are not available on the terminal at all. This is done by translating the code of some character on our keyboard (normally a key that we rarely use) into the code of the character we wish to be printed and which is recognized by our printer. Thus, should we wish our printer to print a tilde, '⁻', but our keyboard does not produce this character, we would, using a translation table, change the code of a key we rarely used—say, up-arrow, '↑', into the code which meant '⁻' to our printer. Then, every time we typed '↑', our printer would instead produce a tilde, '⁻'.
Perfect Writer's translation tables are easily edited using Option 5 of the main menu. As with the character width tables, when specifying a range of characters to view, specify 'short ranges' one after another, otherwise the list of characters will scroll too rapidly to be viewed. The translation tables are:

**Translation Table 0**  This translation table is 'standard' with NO translation, each character translating into itself. This table is provided should you wish to translate one or two characters only, without redefining an entire character set.

**Translation Table 1**  This table is provided especially for use with NEC Spinwriter printers that are being used for proportional spacing. These printers do not use standard ASCII printwheels, and a translation table is needed for Perfect Writer to function properly.
STEP SEVEN
Exit Configuration Program and Update Data File

When you have finished with options 1 to 5 of the 'PFCONFIG' menu, exit the configuration program by selecting Option 6. All information that you have supplied during configuration will be automatically stored in the 'PF.DAT' file. Hereafter, this file should be present on all working diskettes.

Also, since you have changed the specifications held in 'PF.DAT', you may wish to reformat any existing files, since these were originally formatted using old definitions that you may not want to use any longer. For example, after running 'PFCONFIG', you may no longer want files that were formatted for use with 10 pitch printers. You may have created a new 12 pitch printer definition which you now wish to use for all your documents.
Testing Your Printer

Now that you have told the printer configuration program about your system, you should try Perfect Writer on the small sample file, TEST.MSS, provided. Type

\[ A > pf \text{ test.mss} \]

If this seemed to work, try printing the file:

\[ A > pp \text{ test} \]

The result should look basically like the sample at the end of this section.

If you are transferred to the main menu after typing 'pf test.mss' and all went well, then select 'p' followed by the filename 'test' when asked. Enter "G" from the print menu.
Sample output from TEST.MSS

This is boldface.

This is underscore (type u).

This is underscore (type un).

This is underscore (type ux).

This is italic.

This is a test of the Perfect Writer super- and subscripting commands. Here is a \textsuperscript{super} and a \textsubscript{sub} script. Is there enough vertical space around them? Here is some more text just to be sure we can see where the left and right margins are and what the inter-line spacing is.

Completing the Installation

After you have finished configuring Perfect Writer to both your terminal and your printer, make a third backup diskette of the work you have just done, overwriting the first backup diskette which you made of Perfect Writer. (Don't overwrite your original 'Master' Perfect Writer diskette!)

In the end you should have three diskettes: The first is your Master distribution diskette. The second and third are identical and contain Perfect Writer as configured to your console and printer. Take the original Master diskette and one of the configured copies and put them safely away, removing the 'write enable' tabs, which will ensure that you will never inadvertently overwrite them with other text. You are left with one working diskette, which will be used for your day to day operations.
SETTING UP PERFECT WRITER

If you have a 140 to 180K Disk then we recommend the following set-up:

**Disk B** (Editing Disk)
- MENU.COM 22K
- PW.COM 34
- PF.COM 35
- PF.DAT 5
- PP.COM 23
- PW.HLP 6

125

**Disk A** (File Disk) This disk will contain your text files.
- PW.SWP 64K

**Disk A** (During Configuration)
- PWCONFIG.COM 40
- PFCONFIG.COM 34
- PF.DAT 5

If you have a 200 to 250K disk, then we recommend the following set-up:

**Disk A** (Editing Disk)
- MENU.COM 22K
- PW.COM 34
- PF.COM 35
- PP.COM 23
- PF.DAT 5
- PW.SWP 64
- PW.HLP 5

214

**Disk B** (Configuration Disk)
- PFCONFIG.COM 40
- PWCONFIG.COM 34
- PF.DAT 5
Appendix B

LEARNING TO USE PERFECT WRITER

The 'Lessons Diskette' contained in your distribution package contains two disk-based instruction sets on the use of Perfect Writer. These files are self-teaching programs designed to familiarize you with Perfect Writer's basic command procedures. You will find them fun and easy to use—absolutely the best possible way to learn about Perfect Writer. The files of each set are interconnected, so that when you finish with one, instructions are provided that lead you automatically to the next.

The first set, which is intended for individuals with little or no experience in word processing and computers, begins with the file 'LESSONO'. The second, advanced set, is intended for persons who have used a word processor before. This instruction set begins with the file 'ADVINTRO'.

To access the lessons, insert a working diskette of Perfect Writer, which has been configured to both your computer and printer, and which contains a 'bootable' disk operating system, into drive 'A' of your computer. Into drive 'B' insert Perfect Writer's 'Lessons Diskette.'

When your operating system command prompt appears on the screen, switch to the 'B' drive and 'initialize' the Lessons Diskette, thereby allowing its files to be read correctly. Do this by typing:

b:<CR> Type a 'b', 'colon', followed by a carriage return. This transfers you to the 'B' drive.

Control-----C While holding the Control key, type 'C'. This initializes the Lessons Disk.

a:<CR> Type an 'a', 'colon', followed by a carriage return. This transfers you back to the 'A' drive.
You are now ready to enter Perfect Writer’s Main menu and begin working with the disk-based lessons. With system control at the 'A' drive, type:

A>menu <carriage return>

Perfect Writer's main menu appears on the screen:

Perfect Writer
Main Selection Menu
(C) 1983 Perfect Software, Inc.

E—Edit a file <pw>
F—Format a file <pf>
P—Print a formatted file <pp>
S—Check the spelling of a file <ps>
D—Look at the directory on a disk
Z—Delete (erase) a file
R—Rename a file
C—Send a command line to
X—Exit from this menu to

Type one character to indicate your selection now.
Your pleasure: (E, F, P, S, D, Z, R, C, X)

Select option 'E—Edit a file'.

Perfect Writer responds with the message:

What is the name of the file you wish to edit?
Appendix B  Learning to Use Perfect Writer  343

Type the filename of the lesson you wish to begin viewing, either 'Lesson0' or 'Advintro'. Remember to specify that the file is on drive 'B'. Your command should look like this:

```
>b:lesson0  <carriage return>
```

or

```
>b:advintro  <carriage return>
```

Perfect Writer displays the lesson you request, which, from here on, will provide all the instructions you need. Welcome aboard!
Appendix C

CHANGING THE COMMAND KEYS

Note: You only need to read the following text if and when you want to alter the command keys used by Perfect Writer. If you are using Perfect Writer for the first time, then you may want to skip this section until later when you want to change the editor.

By itself the WRTBIND.COM program discussed in Appendix A does not allow changing the command key bindings. Its use is intended for those who are satisfied with the 'standard' bindings arrangements, or for recovery from failure to successfully change the command bindings with PWBIND.COM.† The WRTBIND.COM program creates the FUNCTS.TXT file.

PWBIND.COM requires FUNCTS.TXT, PW.SYM and PW.SWP (which it modifies). Perfect Writer is used to edit FUNCTS.TXT to reflect your desired command structure arrangement. Once FUNCTS.TXT is edited, you simply install these bindings by running PWBIND.COM.

After configuration is complete, only the PW.COM and PW.SWP are needed for Perfect Writer to run.

†Note: For those computers that come with Perfect Writer preconfigured, the WRTBIND.COM and PWCONFIG.COM files are not needed and thus not included.
The FUNCTS.TXT File

FUNCTS.TXT is a specially constructed file. If things in the file are taken out of order, or parts of it are erased, or it is damaged, then errors are almost sure to follow. FUNCTS.TXT is meant to be edited by a version of Perfect Writer in which the tab stops have been set to eight, the indent column set to zero, and the fill column set to the maximum width of the screen. It is meant to be edited in Normal Mode. (Most crucial is the tab setting. If it is not eight, then the file will look 'funny' and the columns will not line up. Inserting extra spaces in such a case to make it look 'not funny anymore' will damage the file.)

Since it is crucial that FUNCTS.TXT be correct in every detail, PWBIND.COM makes numerous checks to insure the integrity of FUNCTS.TXT while it is installing your new bindings. If there is a flaw in FUNCTS.TXT, PWBIND.COM will report the flaw(s), and will abort without altering the bindings in Perfect Writer.

If this sounds ominous and scary, that's because it is. It will be easy for you to make errors with PWBIND.COM and FUNCTS.TXT files. Your first attempt at random bindings is likely not to be successful. Fortunately, you can always get back to the 'standard.' Make sure that you do not experiment with any of these things on your distribution diskette. Make two backup diskettes first, and then save your distribution diskette and a backup in a safe place.

FUNCTS.TXT consists of three header lines and 384 data lines. All of these lines are critical to the operation of FUNCTS.TXT and the misordering or deletion of any or the insertion of extra ones will result in an error message from PWBIND.COM.
Appendix C  Changing the Command Keys  347

The first header line in FUNCTS.TXT is a copyright notice. This notice must remain in the FUNCTS.TXT file and it cannot be altered in any way.

The second header line in FUNCTS.TXT contains information about the default mode. PWBIND.COM will check for a valid mode name as the first word on this line. If there is not a valid mode name in the first word position, then PWBIND.COM will set the default mode to 'Normal' and continue. There can be no leading spaces or tabs before the word, and there must be at least one space after it.

The third header line in FUNCTS.TXT are headings for the four columns in the data lines. This line must remain in the FUNCTS.TXT file and cannot be altered in any way.

Each data line in FUNCTS.TXT consists of four columns. The information in each of these columns has meaning, and you should not alter this information unless you are sure you know what it means first. Each column must be separated from the next by a single tab character. Each line must be separated from the next by a single newline character (that is, the file is single-spaced vertically).

1. The first column in each data line in FUNCTS.TXT is an ordinal number. The number is in the range \{0 . . . 383\} and is the number of the function key associated with that line. The ordinal numbers in the first column must remain in the order that they are in now, that is to say, they must remain in numerical sequence. If the numbers in the first column are taken out of sequence, or if a non-number is found in the first column, an error message will result.

2. The second column in each data line in FUNCTS.TXT is a textual representation of the key that is associated with that line. Control commands are prefixed with a 'C-'. Meta commands are prefixed with a 'M-'. EXtended commands (Control-X) are prefixed with a 'X-'. Combinations that produce valid commands can be formed and are also represented (e.g. M-C-O and X-C-F). Since the prefix commands themselves can be altered with the facilities here, commands will not be referred to as 'Escape' or 'Control-X' commands.
3. The third column in each data line in FUNCTS.TXT contains the name of a function that is bound to the key associated with that line. The names are truncated to eight characters. The name in this column must be a name of a function that is listed in the FUNCTS.DSC file. If it is not, an error message may result, or Perfect Writer may not operate properly. The name must be spelled correctly, and must be in upper case. More than one key can be bound to the same function. This is evidenced by having the same name on many different lines in the third column.

4. The fourth column in each data line in FUNCTS.TXT contains a short description of the action performed by the function on that line, or the name of that function, if it has one. This information must be present, or an error will result. However, the actual information itself is ignored, once its presence has been checked for. It is recommended that if any changes are made to the third column, that the fourth column be updated accordingly.

Therefore, it follows that the only things in FUNCTS.TXT that can be changed are the first word of the second line, which controls the default mode, and the third and fourth column in each of the data lines, which control the function bound to the key associated with that line. If any other things are altered, an error message may be produced, or Perfect Writer may fail to perform as expected.

Again, if you get into trouble start all over. It is easier to begin again than to try to untangle a mess.
An Illustration of Editing the Command Keys

In this section we will give some examples of how you can change some things about. We will describe some of the pitfalls that are not obvious at first glance. Print out a copy of FUNCTS.TXT and a copy of FUNCTS.DSC and have them handy as you continue reading below.

If you wanted to bind EVERY command key to the function that beeps the bell and prints 'Unknown command', then you would replace the function name in the third column of every line, and the description in the fourth column with:

MNOTIMPL Used for keys which are not used.

This would not be a very useful modification to Perfect Writer. Nonetheless, it is one that PWBIND.COM allows. PWBIND.COM is unable to check to make certain that you are not doing something silly, it only checks to see that you are not doing something patently wrong.

On the other hand if one wanted to rebind the 'Center Line' function so that it resided on the X-C-C key (for 'Center') instead of the M-S key, one would need to place

MCINTERLIN Center Line

in the third and fourth column of line 258. (Note that M-s and M-S are distinct, and can have different functions bound to them.) PWBIND.COM will allow this change, however we have now replaced the QUIT command with another one, and if we begin Perfect Writer we will not be able to quit, short of 'pulling the plug.' Again, this is a problem, but it is a problem in a subtle way. To fix this problem we need to bind the QUIT command to another key. X-C-E (for 'Exit') is a good candidate, so on the lines that X-C-E are associated with you should place

MEXIT Exit Perfect Writer

in the third and fourth column. Can you figure out what line this will have to be by looking at FUNCTS.TXT? If we do not want to use M-S and M-s any more, can you figure out how we will make them 'Unknown commands'? If we do not want to use M-S and M-s any more, can you figure out how we will make them 'Unknown commands'? If we do not want to use M-S and M-s any more, can you figure out how we will make them 'Unknown commands'? If we do not want to use M-S and M-s any more, can you figure out how we will make them 'Unknown commands'?

1. It would have to be on line 261.
2. We would place the following on lines 211 and 243:
   MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.


Some terminals have function keys that generate an Escape character followed by another character. If the other character is an upper case alphabetic character (as it is for the H-19) then one can leave the M-lowercase commands as they are and have the M-uppercase commands do something different. This is because most users type with the shift lock key up so that M- commands that they type are all M-lowercase commands. The computer can tell the difference, though and treat the upper and lower case differently. Suppose that the F1 key generates an Escape followed by an uppercase ‘P’. In the usual Perfect Writer, M-P and M-p are both ‘Up Paragraph’. However, since we usually type M-p, and rarely if ever type M-P we would like to use the F1 key on your terminal for something other than ‘Up Paragraph’. We would like F1 to start a ‘Save File’. We can do this by placing

MFILESAV   Save File.

on the line that M-P is associated with in the third and fourth columns. Now when we type M-p we get ‘Up Paragraph’, and when we hit F1, we have started a SAVE FILE command, and now can answer the prompt.

Since the prefixing process is also done with commands, you can change the prefix for Meta or eXtended commands. Suppose that you would prefer that the prefix for eXtended commands was C- instead of C-X. You can do this by placing the MCTRLX command on the line with C- and moving MTOGLC to another key. Can you figure out which lines must be changed?3

Some people are familiar with the use of the arrow keys on their terminals. Since nearly every terminal does something different when an arrow key is depressed, and since it is almost never mnemonic, when designing Perfect Writer we elected to make the entire command set as mnemonic as possible and to ignore the arrow keys. If you feel like you must use the arrow keys, you can rearrange the command set so that the arrow keys do whatever it is that you think they should. However, since most of the characters that the arrow keys are likely to generate are probably already bound to something mnemonic, you may find that you will need to rearrange much of the command set so that you can use the arrow keys. Further, the result may no longer be mnemonic. If you really want to install the arrow keys, plan it on paper first, by printing out FUNCTS.TXT and writing your intended changes in the margins until you get it all the way you want. Don’t forget that if you want to use a command you must bind it to a key that you can type.

3. Line numbers 24 and 30.
We believe the commands-to-keys relationship that we have provided is quite versatile. On most terminals all of the commands in Perfect Writer can be typed without the typist having to move his or her hands away from the home position on the keyboard. Our experience, and the volume of academic research shows that the time it takes to use an off-home key, like an arrow key or a function key is always greater than the time it takes to type even a two or three key command that is reachable from the home position. One estimate is that as much as three to five seconds can be lost hunting for an off-home key, even for an experienced user. If you are a slow typist, it is an irritant. If you are a fast typist it is a major hindrance to have to go to an off-home key.

You will have to determine for yourself what you like best. You may prefer to use off-home keys, even though you can see that it slows you down. That's fine. Or you may set up all the function and arrow keys only to find out that you liked it better the way we delivered it. That's fine, too. Since we cannot determine your tastes in advance, and certainly would not presume to do so, we have provided what WE like best, and the ability for you to make it into what YOU like best.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>char name</th>
<th>function</th>
<th>description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C-@</td>
<td>MSETMRK</td>
<td>Sets the mark at the point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-A</td>
<td>MBLINE</td>
<td>Point to beginning of line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-B</td>
<td>MPREVCHA</td>
<td>Backwards one character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-C</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-D</td>
<td>MDELECHAR</td>
<td>Deletes Next Character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-E</td>
<td>MFLINE</td>
<td>End of line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-F</td>
<td>MNEXTCHA</td>
<td>Forward Character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-G</td>
<td>MABORT</td>
<td>Cancel the current prefix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-H</td>
<td>MPREVCHA</td>
<td>Backwards one character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;TAB&gt;</td>
<td>MINsert</td>
<td>Inserts the character at the point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;NL&gt;</td>
<td>MINDREST</td>
<td>Indent rest of line same as this.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-K</td>
<td>MDELLIN</td>
<td>Kill line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-L</td>
<td>MNEWDSP</td>
<td>Scroll-Redisplay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;CR&gt;</td>
<td>MNEWLIN</td>
<td>Carriage Return.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-N</td>
<td>MNEXTLIN</td>
<td>Next line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-O</td>
<td>MOPENLIN</td>
<td>Open line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-P</td>
<td>MPREVLIN</td>
<td>Previous line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-Q</td>
<td>MQUOTE</td>
<td>Quote Character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-R</td>
<td>MINCRSEA</td>
<td>Reverse Search.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-S</td>
<td>MINCSEAR</td>
<td>Forward Search.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-T</td>
<td>MSWAPCHA</td>
<td>Transpose Characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-U</td>
<td>MARG</td>
<td>Universal Argument Prefix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-V</td>
<td>MNEXTPAG</td>
<td>View Next Screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-W</td>
<td>MDELRGN</td>
<td>Delete Region.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-X</td>
<td>MCTRLX</td>
<td>eXtended Command Prefix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-Y</td>
<td>MYANK</td>
<td>Yank Kill Buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-Z</td>
<td>MPREVPAG</td>
<td>View Previous Screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-[</td>
<td>MMETA</td>
<td>Meta Prefix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-\</td>
<td>MDELEINDE</td>
<td>Delete indentation on current line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-]</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-†</td>
<td>MTOGLC</td>
<td>Toggle case of character at point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;SP&gt;</td>
<td>MINsert</td>
<td>Inserts the character at the point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>!</td>
<td>MINsert</td>
<td>Inserts the character at the point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>MINsert</td>
<td>Inserts the character at the point.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix C  Changing the Command Keys  353

35  #  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
36  $  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
37  %  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
38  &  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
39  '  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
40  {  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
41  }  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
42  *  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
43  +  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
44  ,  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
45  -  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
46  .  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
47  /  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
48  0  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
49  1  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
50  2  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
51  3  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
52  4  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
53  5  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
54  6  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
55  7  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
56  8  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
57  9  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
58  :  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
59  ;  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
60  ▲  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
61  =  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
62  ▼  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
63  ?  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
64  @  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
65  A  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
66  B  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
67  C  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
68  D  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
69  E  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
70  F  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
71  G  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
72  H  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
73  I  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
74  J  MINsert  Inserts the character at the point.
Changing the Command Keys

K MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
L MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
M MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
N MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
O MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
P MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
Q MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
R MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
S MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
T MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
U MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
V MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
W MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
X MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
y MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
Z MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
\ MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
| MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
\ MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
] MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
\ MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
a MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
b MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
c MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
d MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
e MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
f MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
g MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
h MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
i MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
j MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
k MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
l MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
m MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
n MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
o MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
p MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
q MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
r MINSERT Inserts the character at the point.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>MINSERT</td>
<td>Inserts the character at the point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>MINSERT</td>
<td>Inserts the character at the point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>MINSERT</td>
<td>Inserts the character at the point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
<td>MINSERT</td>
<td>Inserts the character at the point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>~\textbackslash IN 1\textbackslash INSERT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>MINSERT</td>
<td>Inserts the character at the point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>MINSERT</td>
<td>Inserts the character at the point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>MINSERT</td>
<td>Inserts the character at the point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{\textbackslash MINSERT}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>}\textbackslash MINSERT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;DEL&gt;</td>
<td>MRDELCHA</td>
<td>Delete Previous Character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-@</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown Previous command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-A</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-B</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-C</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-D</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-E</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-F</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-G</td>
<td>MABORT</td>
<td>Cancel the current prefix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-H</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-K</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-L</td>
<td>MRNEWDSP</td>
<td>Reverse Scroll Redisplay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-N</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-O</td>
<td>MCLOSEWH</td>
<td>Close up whitespace including NL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-P</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-Q</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-R</td>
<td>MQRYRPLC</td>
<td>Query Replace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-S</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-T</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-U</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-V</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-W</td>
<td>MMAKEDEL</td>
<td>Turn on + in Mode Line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-X</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-Y</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-C-Z</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Changing the Command Keys

155 M-C-[ MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
156 M-C\ MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
157 M-C] MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
158 M-C< MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
159 M-C> MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
160 M-<SP> MSETMRK Sets the mark at the point.
161 M-! MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
162 M-" MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
163 M-# MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
164 M-$ MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
165 M-% MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
166 M-& MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
167 M-' MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
168 M-{ MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
169 M-} MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
170 M-* MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
171 M+- MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
172 M-, MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
173 M-- MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
174 M.- MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
175 M-/ MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
176 M-0 MARGDGT Numeric Digit Argument Prefix.
177 M-1 MARGDGT Numeric Digit Argument Prefix.
178 M-2 MARGDGT Numeric Digit Argument Prefix.
179 M-3 MARGDGT Numeric Digit Argument Prefix.
180 M-4 MARGDGT Numeric Digit Argument Prefix.
181 M-5 MARGDGT Numeric Digit Argument Prefix.
182 M-6 MARGDGT Numeric Digit Argument Prefix.
183 M-7 MARGDGT Numeric Digit Argument Prefix.
184 M-8 MARGDGT Numeric Digit Argument Prefix.
185 M-9 MARGDGT Numeric Digit Argument Prefix.
186 M-; MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
187 M-; MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
188 M-< MTOSTART Beginning of Buffer.
189 M-= MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
190 M-> MTOEND End of Buffer.
192 M-@ MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
193 M-A MBSENT Beginning of sentence.
194 M-B BWORD Backwards word.
Appendix C  Changing the Command Keys  357

195  M-C  MCAPWORD  Capitalize word.
196  M-D  MDELWORD  Kill Forward Word.
197  M-E  MFSENT  Forward Sentence.
198  M-F  FWORD  Forward Word.
199  M-G  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
200  M-H  MMRKPARA  Mark Whole Paragraph.
201  M-I  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
202  M-J  MINDNL  Indent Subsequent New Line Same As This.
203  M-K  MDELENT  Kill Sentence.
204  M-L  MLOWWORD  Lowercase Word.
205  M-M  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
206  M-N  MFPARA  Forward Paragraph.
207  M-O  MOPENIND  Indent Leading New Line Same As This.
208  M-P  MBPARA  Back Paragraph.
209  M-Q  MFILLPAR  Fill Paragraph.
210  M-R  MREPLACE  Global Replace.
211  M-S  MCNTRLIN  Center Line.
212  M-T  MSWAPWOR  Transpose Word.
213  M-U  MUPWORD  Uppercase Word.
214  M-V  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
215  M-W  MCOPYRGN  Copy Region to Kill Buffer.
216  M-X  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
217  M-Y  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
218  M-Z  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
219  M-[  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
220  M-  MDELWHIT  Delete Whitespace.
221  M-]  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
222  M-↑  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
223  M-<  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
224  M->  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
225  M-a  MBSENT  Beginning of sentence.
226  M-b  BWORD  Backwards word.
227  M-c  MCAPWORD  Capitalize Word.
228  M-d  MDELWORD  Kill Forward Word.
229  M-e  MFSENT  Forward Sentence.
230  M-f  FWORD  Forward Word.
231  M-g  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
232  M-h  MMRKPARA  Mark Whole Paragraph.
233 M-i MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
234 M-j MINDNL Indent Subsequent New Line Same As This.
235 M-k MDELESEN T Kill Sentence.
236 M-l MLOWWORD Lowercase Word.
237 M-m MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
238 M-n MF PARA Forward Paragraph.
239 M-o MOPENIND Indent Leading New Line Same As This.
240 M-p MB PARA Back Paragraph.
241 M-q MFILLPAR Fill Paragraph.
242 M-r MREPLACE Global Replace.
243 M-s MCNTRLIN Center Line.
244 M-t MSWAPWOR Transpose Word.
245 M-u MUPWORD Uppercase Word.
246 M-v MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
247 M-w MCOPYRGN Copy Region to Kill Buffer.
248 M-x MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
249 M-y MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
250 M-z MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
251 M-{ MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
252 M-: MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
253 M-} MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
254 M-\ MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
255 M-<DEL> MRDELWOR Kill Previous Word.
256 X-C-@ MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
257 X-C-A MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
258 X-C-B MLSTBUFF List Buffers.
259 X-C-C MEXIT Exit Perfect Writer.
260 X-C-D MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
261 X-C-E MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
262 X-C-F MFINDFIL Find File.
263 X-C-G MABORT Cancel the current prefix.
264 X-C-H MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
265 X-<TAB> MSETTABS Set Tab Stops.
266 X-<NL> MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
267 X-C-K MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
268 X-C-L MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
269 X-<CR> MDELMODE Delete Mode from Mode List.
Appendix C  Changing the Command Keys  359

270 X-C-N  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
271 X-C-O  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
272 X-C-P  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
273 X-C-Q  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
274 X-C-R  MFILEREA  Read File.
275 X-C-S  MFILESA V  Save File.
276 X-C-T  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
277 X-C-U  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
278 X-C-V  MNXTOTH R  View other window's next screen.
279 X-C-W  MFILERWR I  Write File.
280 X-C-X  MSWAPMRK  Swap Point and Mark.
281 X-C-Y  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
282 X-C-Z  MPRVOTH R  View other window's previous screen.
283 X-C-[  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
284 X-C\  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
285 X-C{  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
286 X-C±  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
287 X-C  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
288 X-<SP>  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
289 X-!  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
290 X-''  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
291 X-#  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
292 X-$  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
293 X-%  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
294 X-&  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
295 X- '  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
296 X-{  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
297 X-}  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
298 X-^  MWWHATVER  Echoes the version and release date.
299 X-+  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
300 X-,  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
301 X--  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
302 X-  MSETINDE  Set Indent Column.
303 X-/  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
304 X-0  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
305 X-1  MONEWIND  One Window Mode.
306 X-2  MTWOWIND  Two Window Mode.
307 X-3  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
308 X-4  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.
309 X-5  MNOTIMPL  'Unknown command'.


Appendix C  Changing the Command Keys

310 X-6 MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
311 X-7 MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
312 X-8 MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
313 X-9 MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
314 X: MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
315 X; MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
316 X- MUNDNTRG Undent Region.
317 X= MPRINTPO Print Current Position.
318 X-> MINDNTRG Indent Region.
319 X? MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
320 X@ MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
321 X-A MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
322 X-B MSWITCHT Switch to another buffer.
323 X-C MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
324 X-D MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
325 X-E MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
326 X-F MSETFILL Set Fill Column.
327 X-G MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
328 X-H MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
329 X-I MINSSFI Insert File.
330 X-J MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
331 X-K MKILLBUF Delete Buffer.
332 X-L MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
333 X-M MADDMODE Add Mode To Mode List.
334 X-N MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
335 X-O MSWPWIND Switch to other window.
336 X-P MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
337 X-Q MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
338 X-R MWRTRGN Write Region to file.
339 X-S MGOSPELL Call the spelling checker from PW.
340 X-T MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
341 X-U MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
342 X-V MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
343 X-W MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
344 X-X MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
345 X-Y MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
346 X-Z MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
347 X- MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
348 X- MTRIMWHI Globally delete trailing whitespace.
349 X- MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.

MNOTIMPL 'Unknown command'.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X-t</td>
<td>MGROWWIN</td>
<td>Grow current window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-y</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-a</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-b</td>
<td>MSWITCHT</td>
<td>Switch to another buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-c</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-d</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-e</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-f</td>
<td>MSETFILL</td>
<td>Set Fill Column.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-g</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-h</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-i</td>
<td>MINSSFI</td>
<td>Insert File.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-j</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-k</td>
<td>MKILLBUF</td>
<td>Delete Buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-l</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-m</td>
<td>MADDMODE</td>
<td>Add Mode to Mode List.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-n</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-o</td>
<td>MSWPWIND</td>
<td>Switch to other window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-p</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-q</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-r</td>
<td>MWRTGRN</td>
<td>Writer Region to file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-s</td>
<td>MGOSPELL</td>
<td>Call the spelling checker from PW.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-t</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-u</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-v</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-w</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-x</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-y</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-z</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-{</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X:-</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-}</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-\</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-{DEL}</td>
<td>MNOTIMPL</td>
<td>'Unknown command'.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix D

FORMAT ERROR MESSAGES

This is a listing of error messages that Perfect Formatter can generate. Each message is given with an explanation of what might have gone wrong, together with some suggestion about correcting the error. Single quotes, ' ', are used to specify the particular text that is producing the problem.

Error messages fall into three classes: "ordinary," "internal," and "system." In the following discussion, the error messages are listed alphabetically within each category.

To help you find the error in your document, Perfect Formatter will, whenever possible, indicate the line number where the error occurred.
Finding the Error

To find the error that Perfect Writer has indicated:

2. Call up the file containing the error, using the FIND FILE command: (See Chapter IX, page 4.)

3. Position the cursor at the beginning of the file document.
4. Advance the cursor to the line which holds the error using the UNIVERSAL REPEAT command:

\[ \text{ESC} \]

followed by the line number,

followed by the NEXT LINE command:

\[ \text{CTRL} \rightarrow \text{N} \]

Perfect Writer will advance the cursor to **one line beyond** the line containing the error (Remember, the search began on the **first line**.)
Ordinary Error Messages

Ordinary error messages result from some explicit error in the text, usually an erroneous or missing command statement. These are errors that you should be able to correct by reviewing the commands that you have given.

Bad opening character 'char'
Indicates that the first character following the keyword of a format command was not a 'fence.' Either the fence is missing altogether, or a space exists between the command and the fence. Example:

```
@Verbatim (text)
```

space not allowed

Can't open file 'filename'
Perfect Writer cannot find the file that you wish to format and print. Several possible causes exist: you have mistyped the filename, the file is not on the disk you have specified, or the file does not exist.

@CHAPTER and @APPENDIX have been disabled
You have indicated to Perfect Writer through the 'chapters' style parameter that chapters and appendices will not be used. Yet, one or more CHAPTER and APPENDIX commands have been encountered in the document.

Exiting but in a 'name' environment
A format option has not been completely 'fenced.' Either a closing 'fence' is missing from some format option, or the beginning of an extra and unneeded format option has been inadvertently included somewhere in the text.
Extra arguments to 'command'

You have specified too many 'arguments' for a particular command. For example:

```
@Blankspace(2 lines, 6 lines)
```

Perfect Writer does not know which argument to use.

The `@BLANKSPACE` command only takes one argument, in this case '2 lines' or '6 lines,' but not both.

File read error

The file that you are attempting to format and print is somehow 'messed up' or not what it should be. Perfect Writer stops attempting to format it, and proceeds to the next file to be formatted and printed.

Possible causes are that you have changed disks and not alerted Perfect Writer to the file allocation of the new disk, by performing a 'Control-C' after inserting the new disk. Or perhaps the file you are attempting to format and print was prepared on another word processor which Perfect Writer is not familiar with.

Incorrect Environment Closing. Tried to end a 'name' environment. A 'name' environment is open, and it should be closed with 'closer'

In a BEGIN/END format command form, the END statement did not in some way match the BEGIN statement. For example,
Invalid number 'rest of string'
In some command an alphabetical character was used in place of a number. For example,

@BLANKSPACE (10 lines)

The small letter 'o' instead of the number zero '0'

Missing argument to 'command'
Similar to 'Bad opening character.' The first character following the keyword of a command is not a 'fence.' Either that or a space has been mistakenly inserted between the keyword and the fence.

Missing dimension.
You have not supplied the complete form of a dimensioned number. For example,

@BLANKSPACE(5) incorrect
@BLANKSPACE(5 lines) correct

Missing numeric argument
You have not supplied a necessary number to a command. For example,

@BLANKSPACE(lines) incorrect
@BLANKSPACE(5 lines) correct
Appendix D  Format Error Messages  369

Missing 'single' argument
You have not supplied an argument to a command that takes a single argument. For example,

@CENTER( )
      left out the text

Or an extra space exists between the command and the 'fence.' For example,

@I (the word)
      invalid blank space

Non-numeric value 'name'
Some commands, such as the @REF command (see Chapter XVII, page 16) have tried to obtain a numeric value from a variable that does not represent a numeric value. (See the discussion on variables, Chapter XVII, page 211.)

Output file write error
Perfect Writer was unable to store the formulated version of your document on disk.

Possible causes are that no more room on the disk exists for it, or that you have changed disks and have not informed Perfect Writer of the new disk's storage allocation patterns (using a Control-C after inserting the new disk).
@REF: Variable not found ‘name’

Using the @REF command, you are attempting to reference a variable that does not exist.

Either you have forgotten to define the variable (using the @SET commands) or you are mistyping the name of the variable in your reference.

@REF: ‘name’ does not contain a number

Using the @REF command, you are attempting to reference a variable that contains not a numeric value (which @REF requires), but an alphabetic string. You have possibly defined the variable using the @STRING command rather than the @SET command. (See discussion of variables, Chapter XVII, page 211.)

@SET requires two arguments

The @SET command requires two arguments to define a variable: 1) the variable name and 2) the value which the name will represent. You have supplied only one of these. Example:

@SET(page) incorrect

@SET(page = 5) correct
@STRING requires two arguments

The @STRING command requires two ingredients to define a variable: 1) the variable name and 2) the value which the name will represent. You have supplied only one of these. Example:

@STRING(school)  incorrect
@STRING(school = Harvard University)  correct

@STRING: Variable not found 'name'

In attempting to define a variable in terms of another second variable, Perfect Writer could not locate the second variable. Example:

@STRING(school = university)

variable "university" not defined

You neglected to define university as a variable [@STRING(university = )].

@TITLE: Unknown option 'name'

In attempting to reference a chapter or other section title, using the @TITLE command, you have inadvertently used the wrong variable. TITLE takes only the following variable forms: 'chapter,' 'section,' etc., not CHAPTERTITLE, SECTIONTITLE, etc. (See Chapter XVII, page 215.)

Undefined or non-string selector variable for @CASE 'name'

The selector variable you have used with the @CASE format option was either not defined, or it was defined as having a numeric value.

Possible causes are mistyping the variable name, or not using the @STRING command to properly define the variable. (See discussion on the @CASE format option, Chapter XVII, pages 201-203.)
Unexpected end of @CASE argument

An alternative text for the @CASE format option was successfully selected but the text that it presented was **missing**.

A possible cause is an extra or stray 'fence' that prematurely closed the @CASE format. For example:

```
@STRING(User = professor)

    @CASE[User,
    Secretary, "..."]
  a stray fence
      real fences
    Student, "...
    Professor, \"...
Else, "...
```

Unknown argument to @PAGEHEADER or @PAGEFOOTER 'argument'

You have improperly designated the arguments for a PAGEHEADER or PAGEFOOTER command, which can only be 'left, center, right, line, even, or odd.' Either the argument was mistyped or an internal pagefooting delimiter was not matched properly. (See PAGEFOOTING command, Chapter XVI, pages 196-199.)

Unknown argument to @STYLE 'argument'

You have provided an unknown argument in a @STYLE parameter command. Possibly you have mistyped the argument. Example:

```
@STYLE(sapcing 2 lines)
```

mistyped

Unknown command 'name'
Perfect Writer cannot identify the command. Mistyped? (See the Reference Card for the proper form of all commands.)

Unknown environment 'name'
The format option specified in a BEGIN/END command form was either unknown or not a format option that could be used with this command form. For example:

@BEGIN(INCLUDE) cannot use 'Include' in this way
or
@BEGIN(ENUMBERATE) misspelled

Unknown unit of measure 'unit'
Perfect Writer could not identify the unit of measure supplied in a command. For example:

@BLANKSPACE(6 miles)

Unknown value for Note clause of @STYLE 'value'
The value supplied in the 'notes' style parameter was not 'endnote,' 'bottom,' or 'inline,' but something that Perfect Writer could not identify. Has it been mistyped?

@VALUE: Variable not found 'name'
Using the @VALUE command you have referenced a variable that does not exist or which has not been defined using a @STRING command. (See discussion of variables, Chapter XVII, pages 211-214.)
Warning: Argument terminated by paragraph break

A command which takes a single argument (such as the italicize command ‘@I’) has been terminated by a paragraph break rather than its closing delimiter (which was probably missing). This is a safety feature to prevent ‘runaway’ commands. Example:

This is an example, nothing more. @I(This sentence is italicized.  no closing fence here so the italicizing was stopped by a paragraph break.

This is an example, nothing more.

Warning: Footnote wrap not handled properly

A footnote reference has occurred too near the bottom of a page, which has resulted in the footnote (which itself will go at the bottom) being partially or completely lost.

To correct this, try placing a @NEWPAGE command before the footnote, which will cause Perfect Writer to skip to a new page before encountering the footnote. On the new page it will be able to save space for the footnote.

‘Yes’ or ‘No’ argument required; ‘argument’ was given

Something other than a ‘yes’ or ‘no’ was supplied to a command requiring such an answer.
Internal Error Messages

Internal error messages indicate usually that some internal program limit has been exceeded, that storage space has been used up, that a line is too long, that a buffer has overflowed. There was nothing wrong with the input document per se, although changing the document (such as breaking it into smaller segments) may help to correct the problem.

Current token overflow
A single string of alphanumeric characters, spaces, or tabs (more than 100 in a row) was encountered in the text. This single ‘word’ was too long for Perfect Writer to handle. In such a situation, Perfect Writer discards the last 50 characters of the string and continues.

Input buffer overflow
Certain commands such as @FOOT, @NOTE, and the numbered section headings require Perfect Writer to save text for later inclusion in a separate table of contents or notes section.

This error means that the segment of text being saved for that purpose exceeded the maximum of 300 characters. Also, a closing ‘fence’ could simply have been omitted from a command, making the text to be footnoted or placed in a table of contents text much longer than you intended.

Out of memory
When formatting, Perfect Writer divides its machine’s memory into two parts: that which holds the running text, called ‘page space,’ and that which accumulates footnotes, table of contents, and index entries, called ‘end space.’

An error occurs should any of these become full.
Put buffer overflow
A single string of more than 200 characters was given to be buffered for formatting. This is only a warning. Perfect Writer throws away the last 50 characters and continues.

Too many lines
Perfect Writer gathers and stores up to 100 lines at a time for printing on any single page. If a page length has been specified that exceeds the 100 line capacity (that is, your paper is extremely long), this error will occur. However, it is only a warning. Perfect Writer begins a new page and continues printing (leaving the unused space blank).

Too many tokens for a single line
This error occurs if a line in a format which does not 'wrap' long lines contains more than 50 'tokens'—i.e. 'words' or 'character units.' However, this is only a warning; Perfect Writer discards the last 20 tokens and continues.

Possible causes are not having newlines in non-wrapped paragraphs (an artifact of some text editors) or using lots of very short words.
Execution Error Messages

Execution error messages concern errors that occur before actual formatting of a file begins.

Can't find the configuration file, PF.DAT
Perfect Writer cannot find the PF.DAT file which holds the specifications for your printing device, which you supplied during Printer Configuration. You may have to transfer a copy of PF.DAT from your backup configured disk.

Default or console device not defined
No default or console device has been defined for Perfect Writer in the configuration file.

Device 'name' not found, using default
Perfect Writer could not find the printing device you indicated. It is using the default device instead.

Fatal: Unable to read message from configuration file
Data specifications for formatting could not be read from the PF.DAT file. Either replace the present PF.DAT file or run the PFCONFIG program again.
Appendix E

"SWAPPING . . ."

Introduction

From time to time you will see displayed at the right hand bottom of your screen the message "swapping..." This message is associated with Perfect Writer's 'virtual memory architecture,' the feature that allows instantaneous display of any portion of the document you are editing. The message means that Perfect Writer is 'swapping' parts of your document which it thinks you will not be using for a while. You will know that Perfect Writer is swapping not only by the message, but a 'click' and 'whirr' at the disk drives of your computer.

Swapping is a completely automatic process that you need never concern yourself with. Usually Perfect Writer takes the opportunity to do it when you are not working at the keyboard. If it does need to swap while you are working, the delay to you will usually be no longer than two seconds.

"Swap File Full"

If your document is long (65 pages or more), you may get the message "swap file full," which means that Perfect Writer has no more space in its special swap file to store the portions of your document you are not currently editing. There are several ways of dealing with this problem:

1. Delete one or more existing buffers, if you have several active, since each active buffer is using a portion of swap file space (see Chapter IX, page 103).
2. Divide your document into smaller segments and store these on disk under different file names, working afterwards on each segment individually.
3. Temporarily quit using Perfect Writer and increase the size of the swap file using the configuration program (which sets the size of the swap file initially at 64K bytes—enough for about 60 pages of text). Remember to save your buffer files before quitting or they will be lost.
If you have a minimal system with limited disk storage (less than about 150k per disk drive), you may have to do some juggling with the files in the Perfect Writer and Perfect Speller system to get everything on-line at once. You may have to split up the auxiliary files (DICTNARY.SPL, AFFIXTAB.SPL, and PW.SWP) from their respective main programs (PS.COM and PW.COM), for example. You may wish to have an editing disk, a spelling disk, a printing disk, and a document disk. Or you may wish to put the auxiliary files on drive A, the main programs PS.COM and PW.COM on drive B, and your document (assuming it is relatively short) wherever it fits. In performing this juggling act with your small disk drives, just remember the following rule:

Each main program looks for its auxiliary files first on the default disk and then on drive A.

If you must separate the various files keep in mind the search strategy above and select your default drive accordingly.
Appendix F

CONFIGURING PERFECT SPELLER

The Perfect Speller system consists of the following files:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>File</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PS.COM</td>
<td>The Perfect Speller Program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DICTNARY.SPL</td>
<td>The Dictionary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFFIXTAB.SPL</td>
<td>The Prefix/Suffix Table</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There is no particular "installation" procedure required for you to begin using Perfect Speller. Of course, you should back up the distribution disk as you have undoubtedly already learned to do with your other important programs. After copying the three Perfect Speller files onto another working disk, you may use Perfect Speller immediately with no further ado.

If you have sufficient disk space available (at least 150k per drive), we recommend that you keep the Perfect Writer editing system and Perfect Speller together on the same disk in drive A. You then have all of disk drive B for your document. When you become adept at using CP/M and all the elements of the Perfect Writer system, you will probably want to delete the file MENU.COM from your working disk and free up additional disk space.
SYSTEM CONSTRAINTS

Because Perfect Speller collects all unrecognized words in memory, in alphabetical order, it can only handle a few hundred unrecognized words at once. In processing very large documents, Perfect Speller may terminate the dictionary lookup phase early, announcing that its word list is full. Presumably, during the following scan and correction phases you will add some words to the dictionary and correct others, so that a second pass through Perfect Speller will find the remaining misspelled words.

This "graceful exit" philosophy has been applied throughout Perfect Speller. For example, should Perfect Speller encounter a problem writing the newly marked document prior to in-context correction, it will nevertheless list the words which you had marked as misspelled on the terminal screen. Thus, although your text will not be marked (perhaps because you had it on a write-protected disk), your work with Perfect Speller is not completely lost.

All errors which might occur fall into two classes and are, for the most part, self-explanatory:

1. FATAL errors terminate Perfect Speller completely and send you back to the menu or the CP/M operating system. Problems reading the dictionary (because of a faulty disk) will cause a FATAL error, for example.

2. WARNING errors indicate that Perfect Speller has detected something wrong but will continue operating, although perhaps in a reduced capacity. Unrecognized switches on a CP/M command line will generate a WARNING.
Appendix G

LIMITATIONS OF PERFECT SPELLER

Obviously Perfect Speller is not a complete text proofreading system, and therefore is not without limitations.

It cannot detect every type of error you make. For example, it cannot check usage. It cannot tell you whether your use of the word affected should really be effected, or whether you typed rather then for rather than.

While Perfect Speller knows common prefixes and suffixes, it has little knowledge about where and how to use them. If you use buyed instead of bought, Perfect Speller will accept it as past tense of the verb to buy. If you say bater instead of batter, Perfect Speller will not complain, since its suffix rules allow for the simple addition of er as well as the final consonant doubling case. Thus, while Perfect Speller will spot typographical errors easily, it is not a substitute for knowledge of proper English.

Perfect Speller does not know all the words in the language. You may need to add uncommon words that you use frequently, especially words in technical or specialized fields.

Further, Perfect Speller will not catch typing errors involving non-alphabetic characters, such as digits or punctuation. The only exception to this is the hyphen which is considered an integral part of the spelling of many English words.

Finally, because of the method used to encode its dictionary, Perfect Speller will very occasionally let a misspelled word slip through. This error rate is quite low, however, barely exceeding two misspelled words for every 1,000 misspelled words detected (see Perfect Speller Chapter III for a more complete discussion of this).
Glossary 385

GLOSSARY

**back space**

The backspace key is defined initially as non-destructive, thus it moves the cursor back one space without changing the text. If your keyboard does not have a delete key, you may want to swap the delete key code for the backspace key code (i.e., use the swap key option to swap hex 8 for hex 7F). This would make the backspace key destructive. Thus, when you move back you would be deleting.

**break**

A "break" occurs when filling is temporarily turned off. This occurs, for example, at the end of a paragraph in order to start a new line. There are specific types of breaks.

- A line break in the document occurs whenever a newline character is encountered. A newline character is usually a carriage return, a line feed, or some combination of these.

- A line break in the result occurs whenever Perfect Writer places a newline character in the result.

- A paragraph break occurs in the document whenever Perfect Writer encounters a blank line.

- A page break occurs when one page of the result is filled up and a new one begun.

**buffer**

The space in the computer's memory where text is temporarily stored while the computer is on. With the virtual memory architecture used by Perfect Writer, the buffer serves as the space where part of a text file is stored while it is being edited. The buffer is the space between the computer's main (or core) memory and the disk file. It is possible to have as many as seven buffers open during an editing session.

**buffer name**

The name assigned to the buffer space. The buffer name consists of the first part of the filename assigned to the disk file of a document.
CP/M  This is the Control Program Monitor that provides a standard operating system for microcomputers. It acts as the interface between the computer hardware and software. The major advantage of CP/M is that it permits software to be interchangeable between computers. In addition, CP/M provides numerous operating utilities to copy disks, rename and erase files, list the contents of disks, and more.

CR  This is the symbol used to refer to the carriage return key [labeled RETURN, CR, or ENTER on the keyboard].

command  You control Perfect Writer by giving it commands. Commands can be used for either editing or formatting. Editing commands are issued by using the Control and Escape keys. Format commands begin with the at-sign (''@'').

cursor  The "console" is the device you use to interact with Perfect Writer. Perfect Writer also prints status and error messages on the console.

CTRL  This is the prefix used in the manual to refer to Control commands. These are formed by holding down the key marked "Control" or "CTRL" on the keyboard while typing another character.

cursor  The screen display always has the terminal's blinking pointer or cursor on it. Where the cursor is on the screen is the position where Perfect Writer editing commands will affect the text. Many Perfect Writer editing commands do nothing but move the cursor to the desired position on the screen in order to perform editing operations.

DEL  The symbol used to refer to the delete key [labeled DELETE, DEL, or RUBOUT on the keyboard]. This key sends an ASCII Control—?, decimal 127, or hex 7F.
Perfect Writer uses a format program called Perfect Formatter. Perfect Formatter always formats its results for a particular output device (terminal, line printer, etc.). For Perfect Formatter a device consists of a description of a printer and the size of the paper that is being used. Devices are defined for Perfect Formatter by using the Perfect Formatter configuration program (PFCONFIG.COM). Results from the Perfect Formatter configuration program are stored in the PF.DAT file.

Text files are stored on disk in a disk file. After editing a file on Perfect Writer it is normally stored on a disk. This provides permanent storage for the document.

Perfect Writer usually gets the input text from a disk file. This file will be referred to as the "document file" or just "document." The name of the file will usually end in ".MSS" (for ManuScript Source).

The line in the lower left corner of the screen display beneath the Mode Line is the Echo Line and is used by Perfect Writer for three purposes:

- This line will echo any prefix characters (the first keystroke of any of the two-keystroke editing commands) typed. For example, if the Escape key is typed, the phrase "Meta:" will appear in the Echo Line so that you know that you have indeed typed the prefix character.

- The Echo Line is used for reading and displaying the information needed for commands which require user input (i.e., the search, storing and buffer switching commands).

- Error messages are displayed in the Echo Line and, if your terminal has a bell, it will ring to alert you to the error condition.

An environment is a description of how the result should look. Environments control such things as the margins, the line spacing, whether lines wrap, and how paragraphs should start.
filling

The process of making a short line as long as possible by taking words from following lines is called "filling."

format commands

Format commands allow for the printing of text in a set manner. Format commands provide default tab settings, margin settings, line spacing, indent settings and so on. Perfect Writer offers a variety of format commands for such needs as quotations, sectioning a document, printing footnotes, justifying text, and more. Format commands always begin with the at-sign ("@") followed by the name of the format command.

justifying

"Justifying" text means taking a filled line and inserting extra space in order to make the right margin even.

left justified

"Left justified" text refers to text whose left edge is even but whose right margin is ragged.

mark

This is an invisible indicator in the text buffer. It may be set at a particular position by using the MARK SET command.

Meta

This is the name used to refer to Escape key commands referred to as "Meta commands." The commands are entered by typing the key marked Escape and then typing another character.

microfeed

A device that can "microfeed" can move down more finely than one line. Typical microfeeding devices can move down by 1/48th inch (1/8th of a line).

microspace

A device that can "microspace" can position characters more finely than the size of a character. A device that can space by half-, a quarter-, sixth, or tenth-character can microspace.
**Mode Line**

The line just below the text window is the Mode Line. It provides important information on the current status of Perfect Writer:

- The user is operating in Perfect Writer rather than the operating system.
- The mode the user is currently in. There are several modes available, such as SAVE, VIEW, OVERWRITE, NORMAL, FILL, and SPELL.
- The name of the buffer your editing text is in. This name is used when switching from buffer to buffer.
- The name of the text file you are editing. If the file was called from disk, then information used to access the file will be displayed.
- The point in the text where the cursor is located in proportion to the full document (displayed as a percentage). For instance, if the cursor is in the exact middle of a document, the Mode Line will display "50%".
- In addition, the Mode Line will display a "*" if the current file has been modified but the modifications have not yet been saved.

**move**

This means "move the cursor." All Perfect Writer editing operations are done by "moving to" the appropriate place in a document (and on the screen) and making necessary changes.

**paragraph**

A paragraph, as defined for the paragraph movement or filling commands goes until either a blank line, a line beginning with a tab, or a line beginning with an at-sign (@) is reached.

**proportional spacing**

"Proportional spacing" means that different characters have different widths, for example, an 'i' is narrower than an 'm.' A device must be able to microspace in order for Perfect Writer to use a proportional type font on it.

**result**

The file where Perfect Writer puts its formatted output is called the "result" file. The name of this file will usually end in the extension "FIN" (for FINal or FINished).
right justified

"Right justified" text refers to text whose right edge is even. "Right justified" often means the same thing as "justified."

sentence

A sentence, as defined for the sentence movement and deletion commands, begins at the first word found and extends until a closing punctuation mark is found.

split screen

Allows the screen to be divided for the display of multiple file buffers. Perfect Writer allows for the screen window to be split into two windows, each displaying a different text buffer (use the TWO WINDOW command).

style parameters

These parameters permit the user to set the numerous STYLE options for the format commands. All format commands are provided with default style parameter settings.

swapping

Perfect Writer makes use of a virtual memory software architecture that allows it to edit a document much larger than the computer's core memory. This is accomplished by swapping or transferring in pages of a document from a 'swap file' as they are needed for editing. To the user this swapping is transparent because it is all done automatically. However, from time to time Perfect Writer will display the message "swapping" while it is conducting this swapping operation.

virtual memory

Allows your computer to process files much larger than its internal or core memory by creating 'virtual memory' on disk which is accessed when needed. This feature allows Perfect Writer to edit documents several times larger than your computer's core memory by creating a large swap file which is used to create 'virtual memory' on disk.

word

A word, as defined for the word movement and deletion commands, begins at the first alphanumeric character found and extends until a blank space or punctuation mark is found.

wrapping

The process of moving the text at the end of a long line onto the following line is called "wrapping."
INDEX

A
ADD MODE command 84
ADJUST TEXT command 160
ADDRESS format 53
alphanumeric variables 211
APPENDIX format 189, 331, 366
APPENDIX headings 192
ASCII text files 6
at sign @ 145, 157

B
backspace key 24, 298
backup 287
BACKWARD CHARACTER command 27, 40
backward references 216
BACKWARD WORD command 28, 40
BEGIN/END command 148, 179, 367
BEGINNING OF DOCUMENT command 36, 40
BEGINNING OF LINE command 29, 40
BEGINNING OF PARAGRAPH command 32, 40
beginning Perfect Writer 21
BEGINNING OF SENTENCE command 30, 40
below style parameter 221, 331
bidirectional printing 310
BIOS 296
see CP/M
BLANKPAGE command 208
BLANKSPACE command 209, 367
boldface 317
BOLDFACE format 179
BOLDFACE ITALICS format 181
Bottommargin style parameter 221, 329
boundary mark 49
buffer 95
buffer commands 98, 108
BUFFER DIRECTORY command 102, 104
buffer names 97

C
Cancel
GO BACK command 19, 79
carriage return 24
CASE command 201, 371, 372
else option 203
null option 203
CENTER format 159, 369
CENTER WINDOW command 39
Centronics printer 311
changing screens 33
CHAPTER format 188, 366
Chapter style parameter 221, 331
CLOSE INSERT command 53, 331
CLOSING format 160
command keys 14
command messages 18
COMMENT command 207
configuration file 285, 301, 379
PF.DAT 306, 307, 377
console 96, 286, 291, 292, 299, 377
see screen
console device 326
CONTINUE SAVING command 126, 127
Control key 15
COPY REGION command 125
copying text 119
counters 216
cursor 12, 27

D
decimal 293, 320
default filename 60
delay count 298
DELETE BUFFER command 103
Delete key 24, 43
DELETE ENTIRE LINE command 46, 55, 120, 122
DELETE LINE command 45, 55, 120, 122
DELETE MODE command 85
DELETE NEXT CHARACTER command 44, 55, 120, 122
DELETE NEXT WORD command 44, 55, 120, 122
DELETE PREVIOUS CHARACTER command 43, 55
DELETE PREVIOUS WORD command 43, 55, 120, 122
DELETE SENTENCE FORWARD command 47, 55
Deleting 43
DESCRIPTION format 172
DEVICE command 219, 305
Diablo 311
dimensioned numbers 220
disk storage 95, 108
DISPLAY FORMAT 178
document design commands 219

E
Echo Line 11, 13, 50
editing buffer 95, 108
END OF DOCUMENT command 37, 40
END OF LINE command 29, 40
END OF PARAGRAPH command 32, 40
END OF SENTENCE command 30, 40
desk space 328, 375
ENLARGE WINDOW command 117
Enter key 24
ENUMERATE format 168
environment format command 153
Epson MX-80 311
error messages 363, 366, 375
Escape key 14, 16
Escape-Control commands 17
EXAMPLE format 155
EXCHANGE CURSOR AND MARK command 38, 40

F
fences 145, 203, 366, 368, 375
file commands 63
file names 60
file retrieval 66
Fill Mode 13, 83
filling 297
.FIN file extension 71 to 73
FIND FILE command 98, 122, 364
FLUSHLEFT format 162
FLUSHRIGHT format 162
footerspacing style parameter 221, 329
FOOTNOTE command 194, 330, 374, 375
footpush style parameter 194, 195, 221
form letters 201
format commands 145, 151
formatting 76, 151
FORWARD CHARACTER command 27, 40
FORWARD SEARCH command 129
FORWARD WORD command 28, 40

G
gathering text 126
GO BACK command 19, 79

H
headerspacing style parameter 222, 329
HEADING format 186
headings 185
hexadecimal numbers 293, 320

I
INCLUDE command 204
INDENT format 177
indentation style parameter 151, 222, 297, 330
INDEX command 193, 328, 375
input and output ports (defining) 308
INSERT command 52
INSERT FILE command 54, 55
Installation 385
Integral Data Systems 311
I/O port characteristics 296
ITALICS format 181
ITEMIZE format 170

J
Justification style parameter 222
Justifying 311

K
Keyword 366
NUMBERED HEADINGS 185, 188

O
ONE WINDOW command 111
ONE-WORD format 183
OPEN INSERT command 52
operating system 59
OTHER WINDOW command 115, 117
output device 219, 305
overflow 375
Overwrite file 64
Overwrite mode 84

P
padding 294, 300
PAGEFOOTING 196, 199, 210, 372
PAGEHEADING 196, 197, 198, 210, 372
page space 331, 375
Paperlength style parameter 223
Paperwidth style parameter 223
paragraph 24
PARAGRAPH format 188
parallel port 296
pause 74
personal taste 296, 329
pitch 310
Point 12
predefined word variables 214
PREVIOUS LINE command 31, 40
print 67
printer 303-338
printer configuration 303
printer definition questionnaire 314
proportional-space 311, 332

Q
QUIT command 23
QUOTATION format 158, 330
Index

R
READ FILE command 63
Redisplay command 39, 297
@REF format command 216, 369, 370
REPEAT command 86
REVERSE SEARCH command 131
Return key 24
Rightmargin style parameter 223, 329, 330
ROMAN format 183

S
SAVE FILE command 64, 65
Save mode 84
save sequential deletions 43
Screen display 11, 33
Scriptpush style parameter 223
Scroll 33
SEARCH AND REPLACE command 132
SEARCH AND REPLACE (with Query) command 134
searching 129
SECTION format 188, 331
SECTION headings 188
Self-Teaching software 7
serial interface 296
@SET format command 216, 370
SET/REF format 216
Space bar 24
Spacing style parameter 151, 224, 329
split-screen 107
standard file 315
STOP printing 79
Spread style parameter 224, 330
Storing text 59
STRING format 211, 370, 371
STRING/VALUE format 211
style parameter commands 151, 220, 372
SUBHEADING format 187
SUBSCRIPT format 182, 330, 331
SUBSECTION format 188
Successive occurrences 130
SUPERSCRIPT format 182, 330, 331
swap file 103, 289, 379
SWITCH BUFFERS command 100, 104, 118
Synchronization protocol 316
system messages 13

T
tab key 24
tab spacing 297, 330
table of contents 185, 331, 375
temporary save buffer 119, 120, 122, 126
temporary workspace 95
terminal 299
Terminal definition questionnaire 293
test.mss 337
TEXT format 156
TITLE format 215, 371
tokens 375, 376
Topmargin style parameter 224, 329
translation table 334
TRANSPOSE CHARACTERS command 90
TRANSPOSE WORDS command 91
tWO WINDOWS command 107, 110, 116, 122
typefaces 179
TYPEWRITER format 183

U
UNDENT format 176, 330
underlining 180, 310
UNDERLINING formats 180, 310
UNIVERSAL REPEAT command 86, 365
UNNUMBERED format 186
unnumbered headings 185
uppercase 137
UPPERCASE WORD command 88

V
VALUE format 211
"Vanilla" printer 303, 304, 310, 318
Variables 211, 370, 371
VERBATIM format 154
VERSE format 174
View mode 84
VIEW NEXT SCREEN command 34, 40, 297
VIEW NEXT SCREEN \{OTHER WINDOW\} 113
VIEW PREVIOUS SCREEN command 35, 40, 297
VIEW PREVIOUS SCREEN \{OTHER WINDOW\} 114
virtual memory 3, 296, 379

W
Window 11, 33, 107
WIPE REGION command 49, 50, 55, 120, 122
Wordstar 6
WRITE FILE command 63, 65

X
Xerox 311

Y
YANKBACK command 48, 51, 55, 119, 123, 127
Yes/No Responses 19, 288, 374